

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OU_220405

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OSMANIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

Call No.

294.592 ✓

M 29 M

Accession No.

P/O 5057

Author

Manu ✓

Title

Manu-smṛiti with the Bṛhatya &
Medhatithi. 1922

This book should be returned on or before the date last marked below.

Index to Manu-Smṛti.

Adhyaya I.

A

| | PAGE. |
|--|--------------------------|
| 'A'—letter, milked out of Veda | 831 |
| Abhilāṣa—longing | 166 |
| Abhivādana—Meaning of | 304 |
| Ablution—Final | 151 |
| Absorption in desires | 166 |
| Accomplished Student—Way to be made for | 416 |
| „ —deserves honor from King | 419 |
| Action | 61, 69, 70, 92, 148, 168 |
| „ —Good and bad features of | 148, 15 |
| „ —jointly with knowledge—brings release | 2 |
| „ —none, without desire | |
| Accosting—Formula of | |
| Acts | |
| Activity | |
| Āchamaṇa | |
| Āchāra | |
| 'Āchāraśchaitva sādhuṇam' | |
| Āchārya—excels ten Upādhyāyas | |
| „ —is excelled by father | |
| Ādau | |
| Adharma | 10, |
| Adhikaraṇa—of the winnowing basket | |
| Adhvaryu | |
| Adhyāyas | |
| Adhyētavyam | |
| Ādiṭya | |
| Adhyācharita | |
| 'Adhyuṣita' | |
| Advaita | |
| Agastya | |
| 'Āgāvo agaman' | |
| Agni | |
| Agni-Indra | |
| „ —example of name | |
| Agnihotra—prescribed in several resconsional texts | |
| Agnihotrin | |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| <i>Agnihotra</i> 11, 15, 69, 177, 179, 182, 214, 223, 224, 280, 366, 410, | |
| „ —Living existence, the occasion for 328 | |
| „ — <i>homa</i> 225 | |
| <i>Agniṣomiya</i> 63, 188 | |
| <i>Agni-Soma</i> 86, 445 | |
| <i>Agnirvai</i> 177 | |
| <i>Agniṣṭoma</i> 423 | |
| Agreeable—What is—means of knowing <i>Dharma</i> 218 | |
| „ —Detracting of—censured 218 | |
| <i>Āgneya</i> 13 | |
| ' <i>Agnimlé</i> ' 327 | |
| <i>Āghāra-offering</i> 186, 198 | |
| <i>Aghamarṣaṇa- mantra</i> destroys sin 334, 344 | |
| Agc—a ground of respect 409 | |
| ' <i>Āgna āyāhi</i> ' 327 | |
| <i>Agrajanya</i> 235 | |
| <i>Āhitāgni</i> 326 | |
| ' <i>Ahina</i> ' 288 | |
| <i>Ahorātrā</i> 108 | |
| <i>Āhavanīya</i> 11, 249 | |
| <i>Ājyapa</i> 88 | |
| <i>Ākṣṇena rajasā</i> —Sāvitri for Kṣattriya 282 | |
| <i>Ākāsha</i> 42, 98, 119 | |
| „ —created from Mind 120 | |
| „ Sound, the quality of 119 | |
| <i>śa</i> 55 | |
| as—Subsisting on—equal to fasting 480 | |
| —to be got from house not devoid of Veda and Sacrifices... .. 416 | |
| —Method of begging 291 | |
| hty power 68 | |
| uran— 60 | |
| 439 | |
| ng—to be avoided by Religious Student 470 | |
| —Zodiacal Sign 266 | |
| 85 | |
| <i>atā</i> ' 170 | |
| <i>ā</i> ' 170 | |
| 8 | |
| 82 | |
| igs—foremost 189 | |
| 56 | |
| 398 | |
| uracter of Brāhmanas, fed in honor of 484, 485 | |
| 236 | |
| 61 | |
| ded by Religious Student 470 | |
| 442 | |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---|
| Âṅgīrasa—referred to | 432 |
| Âṅgīra's son—taught his fathers, and called them ' little sons ' | 413, 430 |
| Âṅgīras | 78, 204 |
| Anna-prâshana—ceremony | 273 |
| " —in sixth month... .. | 273 |
| " —according to family custom | 273 |
| Anuvâkas | 178 |
| Antyeṣṭi | 230 |
| Apastamba— | 268 |
| " —enjoins names of two or four letters | 192 |
| Apes | 82 |
| Âpâna | 190 |
| Âpûrva | 181 |
| Apsaras | 80, 84 |
| Apostate—excluded from Sâvitri— | 282 |
| " —Brâhmana should not have any connection with | 283 |
| Artists—Friendship and Equality among | 406 |
| Ârambhaṇīyâ Iṣṭi— | 329 |
| Arthakâma—hankering after visible renews | 221 |
| Archayitvâ | 19 |
| Arms— | 74, 133 |
| Arthanâda | 16, 22, 33, 40, 58, 130, 145, 198, 227, 238, 253, |
| Arthavâda—to be construed with Injunctions | 184-195 |
| " —also injunctive | 185 |
| " —Use of | 183 |
| " and Mantras—authoritative | 193 |
| " —First Discourse, wholly | 144, 157 |
| " —Attaining of Immortality, is... .. | 170 |
| " and Mantras | 199 |
| " —Injunctive potency of—questioned | 199 |
| " —Authority of—on dharma | 200 |
| Arundhati | 81, 439 |
| Âryas | 236 |
| Âryâvarta | 236, 238 |
| " —defined | 235 |
| " —Literal meaning of... .. | 236 |
| Arogya | 398 |
| Astrology | 266 |
| Astronomy | 108 |
| Âshrama | 243 |
| Aṣṭakâ | 10, 11, 136, 157, 159, 177, 189, 191, 195, 199, 205, 206, |
| " —Rites—indicated by Mantra, Yâñjandh | 274 |
| Ashmantaku-girdle—alternative for Kṣattriya | 286 |
| Ashes—Wearing of | 158 |
| Aṣvamedha | 206 |
| Asuras | 37, 55, 66, 80, 84 |
| Ass | 8 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|------------|
| AshvalāyanaShākhā of Ṛgveda—Shyena, not found in ... | 411 |
| „ —Somayāga, not found in ... | 411 |
| „ —Vājapeya, not found in ... | 411 |
| „ —Brhaspatisava, not found in ... | 411 |
| „ —Grhya ... | 258 |
| Attributes ... | 43, 44, 90 |
| Atheists ... | 216 |
| „ —ruled out of 'self-satisfaction' ... | 207 |
| Atharvāṇas ... | 179 |
| Atharva ... | 4 |
| Atharva Veda—Daily study of—to begin with Teacher's word... | 331 |
| „ —Shākhās ... | 178 |
| „ —Vedic character of—questioned ... | 179 |
| Atirātras ... | 174 |
| Ati mahāvratam ... | 177 |
| Ātmavān ... | 149 |
| Ātīndriya ... | 27 |
| 'Ātmanastuṣṭireva cha' ... | 206 |
| Ātmabhūt ... | 211 |
| Ātman—denoting preponderance ... | 163 |
| „ —meditated upon ... | 254 |
| Attachment—to be avoided by Religious Student ... | 470 |
| „ —Interdict on study of—explained ... | 180 |
| Ātri ... | 78 |
| Author ... | 1 |
| Āpunāyanam—explained ... | 276 |
| Auspicious ... | 246 |
| Austerity... 61, 64, 78, 83, 84, 125, 132, 150 | |
| Austerities—futile—if disposition vitiated ... | 360 |
| „ —for Vedic study ... | 443 |
| Aunts—to be honoured like Teacher's wife ... | 402 |
| „ —feet of—to be clasped, when one is going on journey ... | 403 |
| Authority—Conflict of ... | 221 |
| Āvāpikī verses ... | 299 |
| Avakīrṇin rites ... | 480 |
| Avakīrṇī ... | 474, 479 |
| Avowed Student—to subsist on alms ... | 480 |
| „ „ —not to eat food given exclusively by one man ... | 480 |
| Avyakṣam ... | 26 |
| Avī—sheep ... | 289 |
| Avarice—to be avoided by Religious Student ... | 470 |
| Avyayibhāva ... | 27 |
| 'Āyana' ... | 111 |
| Āyusam ... | 296 |
| Āyurveda ... | 179 |
| 'Āyusmān edhi'—a return greeting ... | 396 |

B

| | PAGE, |
|--|------------------|
| Bad characters—Extermination of | 152 |
| <i>Bādarāyaṇa</i> | 20 |
| ' <i>Bahur̥cha</i> ' | 259 |
| <i>Bahuputrī</i> —a benedictory name | 272 |
| <i>Bahuvr̥hi</i> | 311 |
| <i>Balaraja</i> -girdle —alternative for <i>Vaishya</i> | 286 |
| <i>Balabhid</i> | 183 |
| Barbarians | 236 |
| <i>Basta</i> —goat | 284 |
| <i>Bandhu</i> — | 281 |
| <i>Bandhutva</i> | 280 |
| Baudha | 37, 216 |
| Baudhāyana—enjoins names to be of two or four letters | 268 |
| Bath—Meaning of Injunction of— | 447 |
| „ --Injunction of—implies discontinuance of Restraints and Observances | 447 |
| Beginning of study—its meaning | 328 |
| Being | 88 |
| Beasts | 82, 85 |
| Begging bowls | 158 |
| Begging of food—to be continued by Initiated Boy—till Bath... | 377 |
| Beetles | 88 |
| Bestowers of gifts | 127 |
| <i>Bhūrticjasaḥ</i> | 78 |
| ' <i>Bhagavān</i> '—Meaning of | 8 |
| <i>Bhṛgu</i> | 20, 78, 104, 105 |
| <i>Bhūta</i> | 24 |
| Blessed Lord | 93 |
| Blessed one | 8 |
| Bliss | 124 |
| Birth—of <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —in <i>Veda</i> | 426 |
| <i>Bilva</i> —wood for <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> 's staff | 290 |
| Birth—through <i>Sāvitṛī</i> —real and imperishable | 428 |
| „ --Vedic—He who brings about—is 'father' | 429 |
| „ --Rites of | 9, 246, 249 266, |
| „ --At Brahmic—Teacher is 'Father' | 459 |
| „ -- „ -- <i>Sāvitṛī</i> is 'Mother' | 459 |
| „ --First—from Mother | 454 |
| „ --Second—after Girdle-tying ceremony | 458 |
| „ --Third—after sacrificial initiation | 458 |
| „ --in womb—is 'Production' | 427 |
| „ --Rites done before cutting of umbilical cord | 246 |
| ' <i>Bhaikṣam</i> ' | 292 |
| <i>Bhāṣya</i> — <i>Upaniṣad</i> —referred to— | 348 |

| | PAGE, |
|--|-------------------|
| 'Bhavat'—form of addressing the Initiate | 400 |
| Bhavati—form of addressing a lady | 400, 401 |
| 'Bhavati bhikṣām dehi'— | 249 |
| Bhikṣā | 292 |
| Bhojaka | 173, 174, |
| Bhikṣus | 173 |
| Bhūh-Bhuvah-Svah—milked out of three Vedas | 336 |
| 'Bhoḥ'—to be used in salutation | 396 |
| Birds | 82, 85 |
| Blood-relations—friendship and Equality among | 406 |
| Body | 45 |
| Body—made godly, by Vedic study | 251 |
| Brahmāñjali—explained | 326, 327, 329 |
| Brahmasatra—daily recitation of Veda | 374 |
| 'Brahmāhuti' | 375 |
| Brahmā—creates Mind | 117 |
| Brahmā—Day and night of | 112, 116 |
| Brahmā— 32, 33, 34, 36, 40, 41, 52, 75, 76, 91, 92, 406 | |
| " —disappearance of | 93 |
| " —Priest | 125 |
| Brāhma tīrtha— | 305, 306, 307 |
| " —described | 308 |
| Brahmic glory—for boy desiring upanayana in fifth year | 277 |
| " —is proficiency in Vedic learning | 279 |
| " | 181 |
| 'Brāhmī'—explained figuratively | 255 |
| " | 254 |
| Brahman | 254 |
| 'Brahman'—in the sense of Veda | 327 |
| " | 1, 37, 59, 69, 92 |
| Brahman—Sāvitṛi in the month of | 346 |
| " —Supreme—reached by daily repeating of Sāvitṛi for three years | 347 |
| " —Attainment of—by means of Action—discussed | 254 |
| " —Knower of | 124 |
| Brāhmīyāṅkriyatē | 253 |
| Brahmāyājña | 253 |
| Brahmabandhu | 280 |
| Brahmachāris—to wear skin of black deer, etc. | 284 |
| " —" cloth of hemp, etc. | 284 |
| Brahmavādin | 171 |
| 'Brahmāvarta' | 231, 234, 239 |
| " —Declaration about usage in—purely commend- atory | 233 |
| Brahmarṣis | 234 |
| Brahmarṣidesha—next to Brahmāvarta | 234 |
| " —described | 234 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|--------------------|
| Bráhmaṇa—Birth of—in Veda | 426 |
| " —his name should be auspicious | 267 |
| Bráhmaṇas—seniority among—by knowledge | 433 |
| " — | 8, 52, 73, 74, 125 |
| " —without learning—mere name | 434 |
| " — —like wooden elephants | 434 |
| " — —leathern deer | 434 |
| " —devoid of Veda—is worthless | 435 |
| " —of Bráhmavarta and Brahmarṣidēsha—to teach Dharma to others | 235 |
| " —of Bráhmāvarta and Brahmarṣidēsha—is like eunuch | 435 |
| " —name should connote peace | 269 |
| " —should shrink from reverence | 440 |
| " — seek disrespect | 440 |
| " —Superiority of | 187 |
| " —superior, regarding Dharma | 187 |
| " —disiring piety—should constantly repeat Veda | 454 |
| " —eldest | 187 |
| " —For—Veda-reciting is highest penance | 454 |
| " —created out of mouth | 188 |
| " — <i>keśhinta</i> of —in sixteenth year | 310 |
| " —best among men | 130 |
| " —with friendly disposition | 353 |
| " —departing from Right Behaviour | 149 |
| Bráhmaṇa—should be asked his 'welfare' | 308 |
| " —with convictions | 140 |
| " —to be treated as 'Father' by Kṣattriya, 100 year older | 408 |
| " —who acts up to firm convictions | 140 |
| " —For—the Savitri lapses in sixteenth year | 280 |
| " —knowing Brahman | 140 |
| " —Of—Initiation by Gāyatri | 281 |
| " —the eternal incarnation of Virtue | 141 |
| " —For—Gāyatri verse is 'Savitri' | 280 |
| " —born for the sake of Virtue | 140 |
| " —ceases to be related to Gāyatrī | 282 |
| " —should not have any connection with Vratyas | 283 |
| " —Brahmachāri—to wear black deer skin | 284 |
| " — hempen cloth | 284 |
| " — threefold girdle... .. . | 285 |
| " — girdle of Muñja... .. . | 285 |
| " For—sacrificial thread of cotton | 288 |
| " —should have staff of <i>Bilva</i> or <i>Palāsha</i> | 289 |
| " For — staff should reach his hair | 290 |
| " —partaker of Supreme Bliss | 141 |
| " Functions of | 133 |
| " —supreme on Earth | 141 |
| " Naming of—boy, on the tenth or twelfth day | 266 |

| | PAGE, |
|---|--------------|
| Brāhmaṇas—Supreme Lord of all beings | 141 |
| „ —guardian of Virtue | 141 |
| „ —owner of all things | 142 |
| „ —deserves everything | 142 |
| „ --Other people enjoy things only through good will of | 142 |
| „ — <i>Upanayana</i> of—in eighth year | 276 |
| „ -- <i>Parivrājaka</i> | 54 |
| „ —Institutes promulgated for | 143 |
| „ —Superiority of—described, by way of eulogium | 143 |
| „ —Murder of | 10, 15 |
| „ —to study and expound the Institutes | 144 |
| Brāhmaṇas—part of Veda | 177 |
| Brāhmaṇa-texts | 57 |
| Brāhma marriage | 152 |
| Breath-control | 150 |
| Breath-suspension | 333, 334 |
| „ —highest austerity | 347 |
| <i>Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad</i> | 254 |
| <i>Bṛhadraṭhantra</i> | 312 |
| <i>Bṛhat-Sāman</i> | 312 |
| <i>Bṛhaspatiya</i> —not found in <i>Āshvulāyana śākhā</i> of <i>Rgvēda</i> | 411 |
| Brother's wife—Feet to be clasped daily of | 404 |
| Bridgroom—Way to be made for | 416 |
| <i>Buddha</i> | 173 |
| <i>Buddhi</i> | 91, 118, 161 |
| Bugs | 83, 86 |
| Bulls | 56 |
| Butter—Feeding child with | 257 |

C

| | |
|--|--------------|
| Calumniating—to be avoided by the Religious Student | 471 |
| Castes | 8 |
| „ —Intermediate | 8 |
| „ —Different functions of | 133 |
| „ —Four | 148 |
| „ —a ground of superiority | 409 |
| „ —Duties of | 153, 155 243 |
| Casuist's arguments against authority of sacrifices | 213 |
| „ „ „ „ „ —controvered | 214 |
| Cattle | 82, 85 |
| Cattle-tending—function of the <i>Vaishya</i> | 135 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|--------------|
| Cause | 36 |
| „ and effect—connote | 208 |
| Cavities—to be touched with water | 298 |
| Cavities'—means holes in the head | 301 |
| Celestial regions | 79 |
| <i>Chākṣuṣa</i> —Manu | 107 |
| <i>Chārvākas</i> | 216 |
| <i>Chaityas</i> | 11 |
| <i>Chauḍa</i> | 246 |
| <i>Chaturvidham</i> | 219 |
| <i>Chīṇḍala</i> | 238 |
| „ — seeing food, makes it impure... .. | 296 |
| Chastisement of pupils | 436 |
| Charity | 125, 132 |
| <i>Chārudati</i> —an auspicious female name | 271 |
| <i>Chaturdashi</i> | 374-375 |
| <i>Chūvīndogya</i> — <i>Upaniṣad</i> —quoted ... 25, 128, 160, 167, 194, 348, 432 | |
| Child—Sacrament on birth of | 257 |
| „ —teaching Veda, is 'father' | 430 |
| „ —Kavi—taught his fathers, and called them 'little sons' | 130-431 |
| Child'—connotes ignorant person | 431 |
| Children—make body godly | 251 |
| Citizens—Friendship and equality among—ranges within ten years | 406 |
| <i>Chāndrāyana</i> | 150, 442-443 |
| <i>Chūḍā</i> —What is | 271 |
| <i>Chūḍakaraṇa</i> ceremony | 274 |
| Clean pupil—to be taught for 'merit' | 379 |
| Clan-name | 260 |
| Clasping of the feet—explained | 328 |
| „ „ —Method of | 330 |
| Cleanlines | 462 |
| „ —one of the first duties taught, after Initiation | 324 |
| „ —explained | 321 |
| Cloth—to be worn by Brahmachāris | 281 |
| Cleansing of things | 152 |
| Clothing—Light—described | 326 |
| Clouds | 81 |
| Clumps | 90 |
| Colour | 44 |
| „ —Quality of light | 121 |
| Collyrium—to be avoided by Religious Student | 470 |
| Comets | 91 |
| Competent—pupil—to be taught for 'merit' | 379 |
| Contents of the Treatise | 151 |
| Cooked sacrifices | 423 |
| Company—purified | 146 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|--------------------|
| Compulsory acts | 148, 164, 254, 256 |
| " --done without idea of reward | 256 |
| Conflict of authorities | 223 |
| " --between Vedic texts | 223 |
| " -- " " --means option | 223 |
| " -- " " --Example of | 224 |
| Control of sexual desires | 354 |
| Constituent attributes | 90 |
| Conception | 227, 229, 245 |
| Consecration | 249 |
| " --brings about peculiarity | 247 |
| Corses | 90 |
| Countries --qualified--Living in--conducive to transcendental results | 239 |
| " --qualified--Living in--prompted by considerations of convenience in performing duties | 239 |
| " --qualified--described | 231 |
| " --fit for the performance of Dharma | 231 |
| Country--between Himālaya and Vindhya | 235 |
| " --created by the gods | 231 |
| Conglutination | 47 |
| Cooking | 47 |
| Configuration | 47 |
| Consecration | 245 |
| Conscious entities | 92 |
| Conscientious Recollection of Righteous men--is source of knowledge of Dharma | 172, 189 |
| Corporeal consecration | 245 |
| Course of study | 442 |
| Creator | 98 |
| " --of all things | 253 |
| Creation | 23, 124 |
| " --amusement for the Lord | 124 |
| " --dependent on <i>karma</i> | 67 |
| Creepers | 90-91 |
| Crematorium | 227, 280 |
| Criticism | 212 |
| " --of Veda and Smṛti, prohibited | 213 |
| Creature | 68 |
| Crocodiles... .. | 85 |
| Crow's teeth | 3 |
| Culture--condition of reliability | 231 |
| Cultured men | 205 |
| Cycle | 92, 114, 127 |

D.

| | PAGE. |
|---|--|
| <i>Dadhi</i> —stands for Wordly Prosperity | 376 |
| <i>Daiva-tīrtha</i> | 305, 306, 307 |
| " —described | 308 |
| Darkness | 21, 24, 90, 98 |
| <i>Darshapūrṇamāsa</i> | 12, 166, 298, 328, 423, 482 |
| Dates— <i>Punya</i> | 266 |
| " — <i>Rikṭā</i> not commended | 266 |
| Day | 108, 109 |
| " —of <i>Brahmā</i> | 112 |
| Dancing—to be avoided by Religious Student | 470 |
| <i>Dākinī</i> —a harsh name | 271 |
| Day and Night | 108-109 |
| " —of <i>Pitrs</i> | 110 |
| " — " <i>gods</i> | 111 |
| " — " <i>Brahmā</i> | 114 |
| ' <i>Dāśatayīraṇu</i> ' | 200 |
| Declamatory | 145 |
| Deep sleep | 25 |
| Deer | 82, 85 |
| Deity | 198 |
| Deity—Definition of—discussed | 490-491 |
| " —forms of—discrbed in <i>Mantras</i> and <i>Arthavādas</i> | 491 |
| Delusion | 159 |
| Depression | 95 |
| Departure | 98 |
| Descriptive passages | 16 |
| <i>Dēvadāru</i> | 362 |
| <i>Dēvas</i> | 37, 55, 61 |
| <i>Devadattu</i> | 77 |
| Degrees of respect | 406 |
| Desire | 61 |
| " —never appeased by enjoyment | 358 |
| " —has its root in Thought | 167 |
| Desires—several—Control of | 354 |
| " —Restraint of—meaning of | 354 |
| " —has its root in Thought | 169 |
| " —prohibited, in relation to compulsory duties | 171 |
| " —Prohibition of—as explained by <i>Vedantins</i> | 171 |
| " —Renunciation of—better than attainment | 359 |
| " —not right to be absorbed in | 163 |
| " —No absence of | 163 |
| <i>Dharma</i> | 5, 9, 21 52, 61, 126, 131, 147, 161, 178 |
| " —described as milk | 376 |
| " —Person entitled to performance of | 227 |
| " —to be taught by <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> resident in <i>Brahmāvarta</i> and <i>Brahmaṣṭidēsha</i> | 231 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|----------|
| <i>Dharma</i> —Five kinds of --according to <i>Smṛtivarṇa</i> ... | 243 |
| „ — <i>Varaṇa</i> | 243 |
| „ — <i>Ashrama</i> | 243 |
| „ — <i>Varṇāśrama</i> | 243 |
| „ — <i>Guṇa</i> | 243 |
| „ —Source of | 243 |
| „ —Treatise on—should supply definitions and explanations | 314 |
| „ —perfect in <i>Kṛta</i> age | 125 |
| „ —Variations in <i>yugas</i> , as to | 132 |
| „ —expounded in entirety | 148 |
| „ —adumbrated in <i>Smṛti</i> | 148 |
| „ —Highest—is Morality | 149 |
| „ —expounded in <i>Smṛti</i> | 149 |
| „ —The term—explained | 181 |
| „ —defined | 157 |
| „ —Sources of knowledge of | 157, 172 |
| „ —how learnt | 181 |
| „ —has four feet | 195 |
| „ —Double sense of the word—(1) act and (2) merit | 201 |
| „ —Right understanding of | 218 |
| „ —Knowledge of—for people not addicted to pursuit of wealth and pleasure | 220 |
| „ —For seekers of—Revealed word, the sole authority | 220 |
| „ —The <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> , in matters relating to | 137 |
| <i>Dharmashāstra</i> —consists of <i>Smṛti</i> | 211 |
| „ and <i>Veda</i> —above criticism | 211 |
| <i>Dhanasiddhi</i> —an auspicious name | 268 |
| <i>Dikṣita</i> | 400 |
| <i>Dhruva</i> | 81 |
| <i>Dhanakarman</i> —a name connoting wealth | 269 |
| <i>Dhanasharman</i> —an auspicious name | 268 |
| <i>Dikṣanīyā Iṣṭi</i> | 399 |
| Dialectics... .. | 218 |
| „ —Reliance upon—censured | 218 |
| Dirt—What is—which is conducive to merit ? | 465 |
| <i>Dirghāyurbhūyāḥ</i> —a return of salutation | 396 |
| Disrespect— <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> to seek for | 440 |
| Discourse I—In—all verses, 85-91, true ; all the rest <i>Arthavāda</i> | 157 |
| Disposition—Vitiated—makes everything else futile | 360 |
| Disposal of damaged skin, staff, etc. | 316 |
| Distress—Times of | 153 |
| Distressed for living... .. | 242 |
| Dissolution 22, 23, 52, 53, 67, 98, 95, 97, 117, 124 | 124 |
| „ —Intermediate | 117 |
| <i>Dina</i> —a contemptible name | 269 |
| Divine Being | 94 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------------|
| Divine Cycles | 114 |
| Divinities... .. | 54 |
| <i>Dr̥ṣadvatī</i> | 231 |
| <i>Dvijātīnam</i> | 230 |
| Dualism | 54 |
| <i>Duryodhana</i> —a name connected with | 268 |
| <i>Dvāpara</i> | 114, 130, 132 |
| Dynasties—Laws of | 155 |
| Duty—defined | 17 |
| " --of living on alms—for Brāhmanas only | 492 |
| Duties | 245 |
| " --of Twice-born men—introduced | 322 |
| " — " castes | 155 |
| " — " man | 5 |
| " --General--of Twice-born men | 324 |
| " --to be entered upon | 209 |
| " — " taught to the pupil, after Initiation | 324 |
| " — " " " —Cleanliness | 324 |
| " — " " " —Right Behaviour... .. | 324 |
| " — " " " —Fire-tending | 324 |
| " — " " " —Twilight Devotions | 324 |
| " --of the Initiated Boy | 377 |
| " — " " —other than Fire-Kindling—incumbent, in succeeding life-stages also | 377 |

E

| | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| Earth | 30, 32 |
| " --after water | 122 |
| " odour--The quality of | 122 |
| East—Facing of—during eating—brings longevity | 296 |
| Eastern Ocean | 285 |
| Eating—with face towards the East—is conducive to longevity | 296 |
| " — " " South— " fame | 296 |
| " — " " West— " prosperity | 296 |
| " — " " North—leads to the True | 296 |
| Economics | 3 |
| <i>Eka</i> sacrifice | 288 |
| Egoism | 38, 43, 44, 45, 46, 50, 122 |
| Egg | 32, 41, 76 |
| Egress ceremony—of the child—to be performed in fourth month | 273 |
| " —for Shūdra also | 273 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|----------|
| Elemental Principles | 43 |
| " —Substances 26, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 66, 120, 122 | |
| Elements— | 67 |
| Elements—Rudimentary | 38 |
| Elephant | 70 |
| Elder—On approach of—the vital breaths of the younger rush out | 382 |
| " —Salutation of—brings longevity | 391 |
| " — " — " merit | 391 |
| " — " — " fame | 391 |
| " — " — " strength | 391 |
| Equanimity under ill-treatment | 440 |
| Energy | 44, 91 |
| Entitled | 227 |
| 'Entire Veda'—Another explanation of | 186 |
| Enquirer—Unlawful—dies early | 381 |
| " — " —incurs unpopularity | 38 |
| Esoteric treatises—Upaniṣads... .. | 419 |
| " —to be learnt along with Veda | 454 |
| " — <i>Brahmanas</i> | 438 |
| Eternal Laws | 155 |
| Eunuchs | 262 |
| Evolvent | 121 |
| " Original | 24 |
| Evolutes | 44 |
| Example—as a source of knowledge | 221 |
| Exigetics... .. | 144, 220 |
| Exhortations | 180 |
| External philosophers | 158 |
| Existent and Non-existent | 36, 43 |
| Expiation | 153 |

F

| | |
|---|---------|
| Father—excels ten Āchāryas | 425 |
| " —excelled by Mother | 425 |
| 'Father'—name applied to one who brings about birth in Veda | 429 |
| Father-in-law—Form of addressing | 401 |
| Father's sister—to be treated as mother | 408 |
| Fasting | 150 |
| Feet | 74, 133 |
| " 'clasping'—explained | 328 |
| " —Method of | 380 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------|
| Final Bath—Fire-kindling and other duties to continue till ... | 377 |
| Final Release 99, 152, 254-255 | 255 |
| Fire-tending—one of the first duties taught after Initiation ... | 324 |
| „ —explained | 325 |
| „ —to be continued by the Initiated Boy till Bath ... | 377 |
| Fire—Circumambulating of—before going for alms ... | 291 |
| Fires—Science of the Five | 200 |
| Fire-laying Rite | 423 |
| Fishes | 82, 85 |
| Five Fires—Science of | 200 |
| Flavours—to be avoided by Religious Student ... | 469 |
| Flaxen cloth—to be worn by Kṣattriya and Brāhmaṇa ... | 284 |
| Flies | 83, 86 |
| Female | 76 |
| Females—Sacraments for | 320 |
| „ — „ „ —all, but without <i>mantra</i> ... | 320 |
| „ —No <i>Upanayana</i> for | 321 |
| „ — „ Residence with Teacher for ... | 301 |
| „ — „ Fire-tending for | 321 |
| „ —For— <i>Upanayana</i> consists of Marriage ... | 321 |
| „ — „ —service of Husband, constitutes Residence with Teacher | 321 |
| „ — „ —Household duties, constitute Fire-tending ... | 321 |
| „ —Rites for | 264 |
| „ —not related to one—should be addressed as 'Lady' ... | 400 |
| „ — „ „ — „ „ „ 'Blessed' ... | 400 |
| „ — „ „ — „ „ „ 'Sister' ... | 400 |
| Feeding of Brāhmaṇas—a form of disposal of sacrificial material ... | 484 |
| „ —in honour of Gods | 483-484 |
| „ — „ „ Pitrs | 484 |
| „ ceremony | 273 |
| „ „ —in the sixth month | 273 |
| Food—obtained in alms—to be made over to Teacher ... | 294 |
| „ —to be eaten with face towards the East ... | 294 |
| „ — „ worshipped | 302 |
| „ —not to be disparaged | 302 |
| „ —to be rejoiced at | 302 |
| „ — „ welcomed | 302 |
| „ —worshipped —imparts strength | 303 |
| „ —eaten irreverently, brings ruin | 303 |
| „ —Leavings of—not to be given to any one ... | 303 |
| „ —in between—forbidden | 333 |
| „ — „ —explained | 304 |
| „ —Over-eating—forbidden | 303 |
| „ —Particles of—should not be carried on body ... | 303 |
| „ —Lawful | 152 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Food—Forbidden | 152 |
| „ —Formula for begging | 292 |
| „ —to be begged <i>first</i> from Mother | 294 |
| Formula—to be renounced by Teacher at Vedic study | 330 |
| „ --Daily start and finish of | 330 |
| „ — „ „ „ Yajurveda | 331 |
| „ — „ „ „ Sâman | 331 |
| „ — „ „ „ Rgveda | 331 |
| „ — „ „ „ Atharva | 331 |
| „ —for begging food | 292 |
| Freedon from distemper—to be asked of Kṣatriya... .. | 398 |
| „ disease— „ „ Shûdra | 398 |
| Friendly disposition—makes Brâhmaṇa | 353 |
| Frightful cpele of births and deaths | 92 |
| Fruit of the Veda | 149 |
| Fruit-bearing trees | 88 |
| Friendship—among citizens—ranges within ten years of age | 406 |
| „ — „ artists— „ „ five „ „ | 406 |
| „ — „ learned men „ „ three „ „ | 406 |
| „ — „ blood-relations—ranges within a short time | 406 |
| „ —defined... .. | 408 |
| Fuel—Laying of | 252 |
| „ —to be placed 'in the air'... .. | 478 |
| Functions... .. | 47 |
| „ —of castes... .. | 133 |

G

| | |
|--|-------|
| Gadflies | 83,86 |
| Gandharva | 61,80 |
| Gaigâ | 102 |
| Gambling | 152 |
| „ —to be avoided by the Religious Student | 471 |
| 'Gaṇa-Dharma' | 243 |
| Garbhâṣṭama—time for Brâhmaṇa's Upanayana | 276 |
| Garbhâdhâna | 247 |
| Gâvi | 53 |
| Gavâmayana | 129 |
| Gautama 193,201,224,244,255,256,290,309,310,311,312,326,328,334,335,359,378 399,406,413,461,469,471,478,482 | |
| Gautama Hâridrumata | 283 |
| Gautama-Sûtra | 289 |
| „ —an arthavâda... .. | 255 |
| Gentle pupil—to be taught for merit | 379 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|---------|
| <i>Gārgi</i> | 254 |
| 'Garlanded'—Meaning of | 455 |
| Garland—means renunciation of Restraints by Religious Student... .. | 456 |
| <i>Gāyatrī</i> —verse | 386 |
| „ —related to <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> | 282 |
| „ —verse—is the <i>Sāvitrī</i> for the <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> | 282 |
| „ —along with <i>Pranava</i> and <i>Shivas</i> | 834 |
| „ —verse—Origin of | 337 |
| „ metre—for initiation of <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> | 281 |
| „ —to be repeated a 1000 times | 342 |
| „ A 1000 times' repetition of—destroys minor sins | 343 |
| „ —Without—Twice-born man becomes open to odium | 345 |
| Generation | 46 |
| <i>Ghṛta</i> —scent | 469 |
| Girdle—investiture | 276 |
| „ —to be worn by <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> | 285 |
| „ —of <i>Muñja</i> , for <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> <i>Brahmachāris</i> | 285 |
| „ —, bow-string for <i>Kṣattriya</i> „ | 285 |
| „ —, hempen fibres for <i>Vaishya</i> „ | 285 |
| „ —threefold | 285-286 |
| „ —of even thickness | 285-286 |
| „ —soft and smooth | 285-286 |
| „ —of <i>Kusha</i> , an alternative for <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> | 286 |
| „ —, <i>Ashmantaka</i> , „ „ <i>Kṣattriya</i> | 286 |
| „ —, <i>Balzaja</i> , „ „ <i>Vaishya</i> | 286 |
| „ —Damaged—to be thrown into water | 315 |
| „ — „ — „ replaced | 315 |
| „ —Before tying of—man not entitled to religious acts | 460 |
| „ —stands during Observances also... .. | 463 |
| Giving of gifts—function of the <i>Kṣattriya</i> | 134 |
| „ — „ „ <i>Vaishya</i> | 135 |
| Gnats | 83, 85 |
| Goat-skin—to be worn by <i>Vaishya</i> <i>Brahmachāri</i> | 284 |
| Godliness | 253 |
| God | 67, 69 |
| Gods—Creation of | 54 |
| Gods | 139 |
| Goodness | 91 |
| Gold—Feeding the child with | 257 |
| <i>Go-baliwarda</i> | 380 |
| <i>Gomān</i> —a name connected with wealthy | 269 |
| Golden Egg | 32 |
| <i>Go-sharman</i> —an auspicious name | 268 |
| <i>Gotra-ris</i> | 467 |
| <i>Gotra</i> | 259-260 |
| Good—highest | 154 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---|
| Good men—Qualifications of | 158 |
| Grammar | 158 |
| Great | 144, 209, 220 |
| Great Soul | 96 |
| Great Sages | 5, 18, 19 |
| Grass-girdle | 246 |
| <i>Graha-yāga</i> | 253 |
| Grandfather | 32-33 |
| Grass-bed | 252 |
| Grasses | 90 |
| <i>Grāvan</i> | 55 |
| Great Night | 26 |
| Great Principle—Intelligence | 48, 117, 118, 120 |
| Great Sacrifices | 152 |
| „ —make body godly | 251 |
| Good | 159, 161 |
| Gross | 66 |
| Gross Body | 47 |
| <i>Gṛhyasūtras</i> | 193, 247, 257, 258, 274, 286, 463, 467, 495 |
| <i>Gṛhyamantras</i> | 200 |
| <i>Gṛtāmada</i> | 467 |
| Greatness attained—by teaching Law | 432 |
| Greatest—Teacher of Law is the | 432 |
| <i>Gṛhyas</i> | 258 |
| „ — of the <i>Kaṭhas</i> | 258 |
| „ — „ <i>Āshvalāyanas</i> | 258 |
| „ — „ the <i>Vājasaneyins</i> | 259 |
| <i>Guchchha</i> | 90 |
| <i>Gulma</i> | 90 |
| Guilds—Laws regarding | 165 |
| <i>Gurorhitam</i> | 378 |
| Guru—Meaning of title | 422 |
| „ —one who performs Sacramental rites | 422 |
| „ — „ supports with food | 422 |
| „ —also one who benefits by means of knowledge | 429 |

H

| | |
|--|--------|
| Hails | 81 |
| <i>Haimavutī</i> | 102 |
| Hard-heartedness | 70 |
| Harsh words—not to be used | 439 |
| Harmlessness | 70, 78 |
| Happiness | 61 |
| Harmony | 44, 91 |
| <i>Hāridrumata</i> | 283 |
| ' <i>Hāyana</i> '—is <i>samvatsara</i> | 432 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|------------------------------|
| Hate | 159 |
| Heart | 161 |
| Heaven | 14, 32, 64, 168, 216 |
| 'Here I am'—a formula for accosting younger superiors ... | 401 |
| Hempen cloth—for Brāhmaṇa Brahmachāri | 284 |
| Hermaphrodite | 76, 264 |
| Heretics—Laws regarding | 155 |
| Heaven and Earth | 32, 42 |
| Highest good | 154 |
| High-souled | 19, 83 |
| Himālaya | 235-236 |
| Himsā | 187 |
| Himavat | 102 |
| Hiranyakṣa | 80 |
| History | 220 |
| Hiranyagarbha | 22, 26, 30, 32, 83, 102, 387 |
| Hiranyasharman—an auspicious name | 268 |
| Holidays—Non-observance of | 373 |
| „ —not observed, in regard to Vedic auxiliaries ... | 373 |
| „ — „ , in connection with <i>mantras</i> recited at Oblations ... | 373 |
| „ — „ , in daily recitation | 374 |
| Homa | 225, 252 |
| „ —perishable | 350 |
| Honey—Feeding of the child with | 257 |
| „ —to be avoided by Religious Student | 469 |
| Hotṛ | 125 |
| Household duties—Constitute 'Fire-tending' for women ... | 321 |
| Householder—Initiated | 152 |
| „ —Daily Veda-reciting by | 338 |
| „ —Duties of | 253 |
| „ —Daily study of Veda by | 332 |
| Hṛtakūpa—Story of | 295 |
| Human Life—Span of | 128 |
| Hunger | 64 |
| Hurtfulness | 70, 72 |
| Husband and Wife—Duties of | 152 |
| Husband—Serving of—is 'Residence with Teacher'—for women | 321 |
| Hymns | 180 |

I

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---------|
| Ignorant person—called 'child' | 431 |
| 'Ikhā tvorjē' | 59, 327 |
| Ill-treatment—Equanimity under | 440 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|------------------|
| Illusory Modifications | 29 |
| Immortals—Position of—obtained by Right Behaviour ... | 170 |
| Immortals | 169 |
| Impotent | 264 |
| Immovable things | 83 |
| " beings | 86 |
| Immovable | 100 |
| Imperishable One | 101-102 |
| Impregnation | 151 |
| Inanimate | 56 |
| Inconsistency | 226 |
| Individual | 100 |
| " —souls | 99 |
| Inertia | 44 |
| Injunctions—Vedic | 198 |
| " | 9, 102 |
| <i>Indrabhūti</i> | 273 |
| <i>Indrarāta</i> | 273 |
| <i>Indraviṣṇu</i> | 273 |
| <i>Indrayotiṣ</i> | 273 |
| <i>Indradēva</i> | 273 |
| <i>Indrasharman</i> | 273 |
| <i>Indrasvāmī</i> | 273 |
| <i>Indrayashas</i> | 273 |
| 'Indra'—a meritorious name | 268 |
| <i>Indra</i> | 54, 55, 468, 469 |
| Inference... .. | 22-23 |
| Injuring others—to be avoided | 439 |
| " — " —by Religious Student | 471 |
| Inner consciousness | 90 |
| Infidel—detractor of Veda | 215 |
| Institutes—promulgated for the Brāhmaṇa | 113 |
| " —to be studied by " " | 144 |
| " — " taught " " | 144 |
| " — " studied " all three castes | 145 |
| " —Results accruing from the study of | 146 |
| " —conducive to welfare | 147 |
| " —expand the understanding | 147 |
| " —constitute the highest good | 147 |
| " —Contents of—declared | 151 |
| Instruction—No—without asking | 380 |
| " — " —for improper enquiries | 380 |
| Instructor—Unlawful—dies early | 381 |
| " — " —incurs unpopularity | 381 |
| Initiate—for sacrifice—not to be addressed by name | 399 |
| " —to be addressed as 'Sir' | 399 |
| Initiated Boy | 377 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|------------------|
| Initiatory Rite | 202, 294 |
| „ —After—teaching of Observances | 462 |
| „ — „ —getting up of Veda | 462 |
| Injunctions and Prohibitions | 172 |
| „ —possible also, without Injunctive word | 298 |
| Initiation | 9, 245, 251, 276 |
| „ —Exclusion from | 282 |
| Initiated Student | 151 |
| „ Householder | 152 |
| Initiation—for Brāhmaṇa—with <i>Gāyatrī</i> | 281 |
| „ — „ Kṣatriya— „ <i>Trṣṭup</i> | 281 |
| „ — „ Vaishya — „ <i>Jagatī</i> | 281 |
| Intelligence | 43, 44, 91 |
| „ —Great Principle | 117, 122 |
| Intermediate body | 100 |
| Invocation | 180 |
| Iṣṭi-sacrifice | 288 |
| <i>Ita Indra</i> , etc. | 186 |
| <i>Ita Indra urdhvo</i> , etc. | 195 |
| <i>Itihāsu</i> | 27, 56, 80, 179 |

J.

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <i>Jābāla Satyakāma</i> | 283 |
| „ —Story of—referred to | 261 |
| <i>Jagatī</i> —metre of Vaishya Initiation | 281 |
| „ —related to Vaishya | 282 |
| Jaimini | 17, 366 |
| Janārdana Mishra | 399 |
| <i>Jarāyu</i> | 85 |
| <i>Jartilayavāgrā</i> | 288 |
| <i>Jātakarman</i> | 246, 265 |
| „ —Sacrament | 257, 261 |
| „ — „ —what it consists in | 257 |
| <i>Jīvas</i> | 99 |
| <i>Jñāti</i> | 403 |
| ‘ <i>Juhoti-yajati</i> ’—the expression | 350 |
| Jupiter and Venus | 266 |
| ‘Juncture’ | 112, 114 |
| ‘Juncture-end’ | 112, 114 |
| <i>Jyotiṣṭoma</i> | 63, 127, 179, 214, 221, 246, 253 |
| „ —excelled by repeating of Mantras | 351 |

K

PAGE.

| | |
|--|-------------------------|
| <i>Kachchhapāl</i> | 85 |
| <i>Kalpa</i> —stands for all Subsidiary Sciences | 419 |
| <i>Kāma</i> —described as <i>Ghṛta</i> | 376 |
| <i>Kalpasūtra</i> —a Vedic appurtenance | 378 |
| <i>Kalā</i> | 108 |
| <i>Kali Cycle</i> | 114, 127, 130, 131, 132 |
| <i>Kauthuma</i> | 250 |
| <i>Kārayēt</i> | 265 |
| <i>Karamātmanām</i> | 54-55 |
| <i>Kavi</i> —son of <i>Angiras</i> —taught his Fathers | 430 |
| <i>Kalyāṇa-sharman</i> —an auspicious name | 268 |
| <i>Kāma</i> | 181, 245 |
| „ —meaning of the word | 106 |
| <i>Karma</i> | 47 |
| „ —determines creation | 67 |
| <i>Kārya</i> | 15-16 |
| <i>Kāriri</i> | 214, 256 |
| <i>Kashyapa</i> and other sages—called ‘ <i>Prajāpati</i> ’ | 337 |
| <i>Kāṣṭhā</i> | 108 |
| <i>Kāshmīra</i> | 240 |
| ‘ <i>Kusyachit</i> ’ | 304 |
| <i>Kaṭhas</i> — <i>Grhya</i> of | 258 |
| <i>Kaṭha</i> | 102 |
| <i>Kāṭhaka</i> | 102, 178, 259 |
| <i>Keshvāntika</i> | 290 |
| <i>Keshvānta</i> | 322 |
| „ —a sacrament | 319 |
| „ —for <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —in 16th year | 319 |
| „ — „ <i>Kṣattriya</i> — „ 22nd year | 319 |
| „ — „ <i>Vaishya</i> — „ 24th year | 319 |
| <i>Khadira</i> | 238, 298 |
| „ wood—for <i>Kṣattriya</i> ’s staff | 289 |
| <i>Killing</i> —Sacrificial—different from ordinary | 216 |
| <i>Kindred</i> —purified | 146 |
| <i>King</i> | 68, 143, 144 |
| „ —Duty of | 152 |
| „ —Way to be made for | 416 |
| „ and Accomplished Student—deserve special respect | 418 |
| „ —should honour the Accomplished Student | 418 |
| <i>Kinnaras</i> | 82 |
| <i>Knowledge</i> —Importer of Scriptural—to be saluted | 387 |
| „ — „ „ Temporal— „ „ | 387 |
| „ — „ „ Spiritual— „ „ | 387 |
| „ — „ „ to be taught for Merit | 370 |
| „ —not to be imparted—where Merit and Wealth impossible | 382 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------------------------|
| Knowledge—not to be imparted—where pupil has no desire to | |
| serve Teacher ... | 382 |
| " — " — " —when sown in barren soil ... | 383 |
| Knowledge with Action—brings Release ... | 254 |
| 'Knowers of Brahman' ... | 124 |
| <i>Kovidāra</i> ... | 21 |
| <i>Kodrava</i> grains ... | 362 |
| <i>Kṛṣṇasāra</i> ... | 236 |
| ' <i>Kṛpaṇaka</i> '—a contemptible name ... | 269 |
| <i>Kratu</i> ... | 78 |
| ' <i>Kṛṣṇavartman</i> '—fire ... | 358 |
| <i>Kṛchchra</i> ... | 150, 369 |
| <i>Kṛttikā</i> ... | 60 |
| <i>Krama</i> ... | 234 |
| ' <i>Kṛta-cycle</i> ' ... | 112, 127, 128, 131, 132 |
| " —Dharma perfect in ... | 125 |
| ' <i>Kṛtvāsuch</i> ' ... | 342 |
| <i>Kṣapaṇaka</i> ... | 173 |
| ' <i>Kṣattṛ</i> ' ... | 8, 154 |
| <i>Kṣema</i> ... | 398 |
| <i>Kṣattriya</i> ... | 8, 74, 227 |
| " —Name of—should be powerful ... | 287 |
| " — " — should connote 'Protection' ... | 269 |
| " —to be asked his 'freedom from distemper' ... | 398 |
| " —Upanayana of—in eleventh year ... | 276 |
| " —Naming of —after twelfth day ... | 265 |
| " —For— <i>Sāvitrī</i> lapses in twenty-second year ... | 280 |
| " —Initiation of—by <i>Trṣṭup</i> ... | 281 |
| " —ceases to be related to <i>Trṣṭup</i> ... | 282 |
| " —For— <i>Ākṣṇēna</i> is the <i>Sāvitrī</i> ... | 282 |
| " <i>Brahmachāri</i> —to wear <i>Ruru</i> deer skin ... | 284 |
| " " — " flaxen cloth ... | 284 |
| " —to treat, as Father, a <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> even 100 years | |
| younger ... | 408 |
| " —to wear bowstring girdle ... | 285 |
| " —Seniority among—by valour ... | 433 |
| " —For—Sacrificial Thread of Hemp ... | 288 |
| " — " —Staff of <i>Vaṣa</i> and <i>Khadir</i> ... | 289 |
| " — " — " should reach the forehead ... | 290 |
| " — " — <i>Kēśhānta</i> in 22nd year ... | 319 |
| " —Functions of ... | 134 |
| " caste ... | 238, 244 |
| <i>Kulavāhikā</i> —a benedictory female name ... | 272 |
| <i>Kumārila</i> ... | 18, 233 |
| <i>Kurukṣētra</i> ... | 235 |
| " —comprised in <i>Brahmaṛṣidēsha</i> ... | 234 |
| " —Meaning of ... | 234 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|--------------|
| <i>Kurus</i> | 7, 234 |
| <i>Kusha grass</i> | 90, 238, 252 |
| „ —alternative for <i>Brahmachâri</i> | 286 |
| „ —as seat for Vedic Student | 333 |
| <i>Kushala</i> | 398 |
| <i>Kuṣṭha</i> —a scent | 469 |
| ' <i>Kūṭa</i> '—means kusha-blade | 334 |
| <i>Kuvêra</i> | 80 |

L

| | |
|---|----------|
| <i>Land</i> | 60 |
| <i>Land-cultivation</i> | 181 |
| „ —function of <i>Vaishya</i> | 135 |
| <i>Lagna</i> —same as <i>Muhūrta</i> | 266 |
| ' <i>Lalāṭasamuitaḥ</i> ' | 291 |
| <i>Lakṣmī</i> | 299 |
| <i>Laukika</i> knowledge | 387 |
| <i>Law</i> | 23 |
| „ —Origin of | 102 |
| <i>Law-suits</i> —Occasion for | 152 |
| <i>Laws</i> —Eternal—of countries | 155 |
| <i>Learned</i> | 155, 160 |
| <i>Learned men</i> —Friendship and Equality among | 406 |
| „ —Among <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> —best | 140 |
| <i>Learning</i> —a condition of reliability | 231 |
| „ —said to <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> , 'I am thy wealth' | 385 |
| „ — „ „ , 'Impart me not to a scorner' | 385 |
| „ — „ „ , 'Guard me' | 385 |
| „ — „ „ , 'Expound me to <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> , who is never careless' | 385 |
| „ — „ „ , 'Expound me to <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> , who is pure and self-controlled' | 385 |
| „ —a ground of respect | 409 |
| <i>Leavings of food</i> —not to be given to any one | 303 |
| „ —Meaning of | 303 |
| <i>Lightnings</i> | 81 |
| <i>Libations</i> —make body godly | 251 |
| „ —in connection with pregnancy | 246 |
| <i>Livelihood</i> —Means of | 152 |
| <i>Living</i> —Distressed for | 242 |
| <i>Life-breath</i> | 59 |
| <i>Light</i> —endowed with quality of Colour | 121 |
| „ —after wind | 121 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|------------------------|
| Lice | 83, 86 |
| Lion | 70 |
| Logic | 144, 220 |
| Love and Hate | 159, 160, 201 |
| Love | 159 |
| Locus | 287 |
| Lomuka | 34 |
| Lord | 31, 67, 68, 69, 70, 76 |
| Loving behaviour towards ancestors, etc. | 465 |
| Lunar mansions | 60 |
| „ asterisms—begin with <i>Shraviṣṭhā</i> | 266 |
| „ dates—auspicious, the <i>fifth</i> , etc. | 266 |
| „ „ | 265 |
| „ asterisms | 265 |
| Lying - to be avoided—by Religious Student | 471 |

M.

| | |
|--|----------------------------|
| ' M ' -a syllable milked out of the Vedas | 336 |
| <i>Maitro Brāhmaṇa uchyate</i> | 353 |
| ' Madhu '—stands for Release | 376 |
| <i>Madhuchchandas</i> | 467 |
| <i>Mahābhārata</i> | 37, 55, 310, 390 |
| <i>Mahābhāṣya</i> | 209, 394, 437 |
| <i>Mahādhana</i> —a name connecting wealth | 260 |
| <i>Mahāvāyārtis</i> —With <i>Sāvitri</i> —is the ' Mouth of Brahman ' | 346 |
| <i>Maṅgalā Dēvi</i> | 271 |
| <i>Maṅgala-shurman</i> —an auspicious name | 268 |
| <i>Maṅgalyam</i> —a name... .. | 267 |
| <i>Māṅgasthānāni</i> | 413 |
| Marriage-rites—same as <i>Upanayana</i> , for women | 321 |
| Major Premises | 23 |
| <i>Mauñji-bandhanu</i> | 276 |
| ' <i>Mahēshvara</i> ' | 34 |
| <i>Mauñji</i> | 286 |
| <i>Mantra</i> | 22, 80, 130, 182, 195, 198 |
| <i>Mantra</i> -repeating—excels offerings | 351, 352 |
| „ ---Inaudible—excels the audible | 351 |
| „ ---Mental— „ all kinds | 351 |
| „ ---excels ' Great Sacrifices ' | 352 |
| „ ---leads to success | 353 |
| <i>Mantra</i> -text | 12 |
| <i>Mantra</i> -authoritative | 186 |
| „ --Uses of | 186 |
| „ and <i>Arthavadu</i> | 193 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Mantra</i> —accompanies Rites | 28 |
| „ —indicative of form of action | 195 |
| „ —Rites done with | 227 |
| „ —Imparter of—is ' father ' | 431 |
| <i>Manu</i> | 1, 4, 5, 7, 102, 104, 107, 143, 155 |
| „ —Injunctions relating to the work of | 228 |
| „ —Creation of | 77 |
| „ —Assertion's of—contained in Veda | 208 |
| „ —Recollection of | 189 |
| „ — <i>Svāyamhuza</i> | 230 |
| „ —Method of compilation by | 196 |
| <i>Mānava</i> | 19, 20, 102 |
| <i>Man</i> —foremost among rational beings | 139 |
| <i>Manus</i> | ...78, 106, 107 |
| <i>Manvantara</i> | 106, 107, 122, 123, 124 |
| „ —is a régime of Manu | 123 |
| <i>Mahat</i> | 37, 38, 39, 40, 43, 118 |
| <i>Mahat-tattu</i> | 118 |
| <i>Mahān</i> | 118 |
| <i>Mau</i> | 67, 167 |
| <i>Male child</i> | 261 |
| „ —asignification of gender in expression | 261 |
| <i>Male</i> | 76 |
| „ —character | 263 |
| <i>Matter</i> | 97 |
| <i>Mati</i> | 118 |
| <i>Masculinity</i> | 262 |
| <i>Maruts</i> | 55 |
| <i>Maṇḍu</i> | 34 |
| <i>Madhyadēsha</i> —described | 235 |
| <i>Mango blossoms</i> | 72 |
| <i>Madhu</i> —Honey | 469 |
| <i>Master</i> | 72 |
| <i>Marichi</i> | 78, 83, 102, 103 |
| <i>Marriage</i> —Definition of | 152 |
| <i>Mahānāmika Upaniṣad</i> | 443 |
| <i>Méduas</i> | 236 |
| <i>Menstrual period</i> | 220 |
| ' <i>Médhātithi</i> '—a meritorious name | 268 |
| <i>Meteors</i> | 81 |
| <i>Method of study</i> | 442 |
| <i>Ministers</i> | 72 |
| <i>Middle country</i> —described | 235 |
| <i>Mīmāṃsā</i> | 158, 209, 220 |
| <i>Mīmāṃsā-Sūtra</i> | 165, 182, 190, 237, 298, 376 |
| <i>Mīmāṃsukas</i> | 214 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Minor sins—washed by 1000 <i>japa</i> of <i>Gāyatrī</i> | 343 |
| Mind 6, 27, 28, 43, 46, 47, 118, 119, 161 | |
| „ —‘existent’ and ‘non-existent’ | 117 |
| „ —created by <i>Brahmā</i> | 117 |
| „ —applied to creation | 117 |
| „ —subdued, all purposes are accomplished | 363 |
| „ —collected | 6 |
| „ —the eleventh organ | 357 |
| „ —Subjugation of—leads to subjugation of all else | 357 |
| „ —Pure—brings reward | 437 |
| <i>Mitrāvaruṇa</i> | 468. |
| Mixed castes | 152 |
| <i>Mlechchha</i> 238, 240, 241 | |
| „ <i>dēsha</i> 286, 288 | |
| <i>Mlechchhas</i> —Who are 236, 238, 241 | |
| Mother—more venerable than aunts | 403 |
| „ —excels a thousand fathers | 425 |
| „ —Food to be first begged from—after Initiation | 294 |
| Mother's sister—Food to be begged from | 294 |
| „ —to be treated as mother | 403 |
| Mother-in-law—to be treated like Teacher's wife | 402 |
| <i>Mokṣa</i> —described as ‘honey’ | 376 |
| Monosyllable ‘ <i>Om</i> ’—is supreme <i>Brahman</i> | 347 |
| Moths | 83 |
| Money-lending—function of <i>Vaiśhya</i> | 185 |
| Money—Giver of—to be taught for Merit | 379 |
| Mouth 74, 133 | |
| „ —the purest part | 130 |
| Mountains | 60 |
| ‘ <i>Modaka</i> ’ | 178 |
| Modifications | 29 |
| Morality—Eternal—expounded | 148 |
| „ —highest <i>Dharma</i> | 149 |
| ‘ <i>Mṛdam gām daiwatam</i> ,’ etc. | 490 |
| ‘ <i>Mugri</i> ’ | 178 |
| ‘ <i>Muhūrta</i> ’ | 108 |
| „ —means <i>Lagna</i> | 266 |
| ‘ <i>Mūrdhavasikta</i> ’ | 8 |
| <i>Murvā</i> grass 244, 285 | |
| Musical words | 134 |
| „ instruments—Playing of—to be avoided by Religious Student | 470 |

N

| | |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Name | 200 |
| „ —Examples of | 268 |

| | PAGE, |
|---|---------|
| Name—'conducive to merit' ... | 268 |
| " —for Vaishyas—examples of ... | 269 |
| " —Meritorious— " ... | 268 |
| " —Inauspicious— " ... | 268 |
| " —for Brāhmaṇas— " ... | 268 |
| " — " Kṣātriyas— " ... | 268 |
| " —of Brāhmaṇa, should connote 'peace' ... | 269 |
| " — " Kṣātriya, " " 'protection' ... | 269 |
| " — " Vaishya, " " 'prosperity' ... | 269 |
| " — " Shudra, " " 'submissiveness' ... | 269 |
| " —ending in ' svāmī ' ... | 270 |
| " — " ' datta ' ... | 270 |
| " — " ' bhūti ' ... | 270 |
| " —connoting submissiveness— examples of ... | 270 |
| " — " prosperity— " ... | 270 |
| " —of woman, should be soft, easily pronounceable ... | 271 |
| " — " —examples of... ... | 271 |
| " — " —counter—examples of ... | 271 |
| " — " —heart-captivating ... | 271 |
| " — " —Examples of—of plain meaning ... | 271 |
| " —to be pronounced, when accosting an elder ... | 391 |
| Names—auspicious—for women ... | 272 |
| " —benedictory— " ... | 272 |
| Naming of Brāhmaṇa—after tenth day ... | 265 |
| " Kṣātriya— " twelfth " ... | 265 |
| " Vaishya— " fifteenth " ... | 265 |
| "—Criterion of above view ... | 265 |
| "—ceremony—on tenth or twelfth day ... | 265 |
| "—is done, according to family custom ... | 273 |
| ' Naimittika-Dharma,' ... | 243 |
| Naiyāyikas ... | 219 |
| Nāmadheya—naming ... | 265 |
| ' Naityakam vidhim '... ... | 372 |
| Nara ... | 34 |
| ' Narasīmha ' ... | 107 |
| Nārāyaṇa ... | 34 |
| Nārada ... | 78, 102 |
| Nāga ... | 80 |
| ' Nārīpuruṣatoṣṇūmantaram mahadantaram ... | 234 |
| ' Nava-shrāddha ' ... | 462 |
| Nether regions ... | 42 |
| ' Nibandhana '—same as ' bandhana ' ... | 247 |
| Nigama ... | 220 |
| Night ... | 108-109 |
| " —Great ... | 26 |
| Nirgrantha ... | 174 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------------------|
| <i>Nirukta</i> | 56,57,220,898,424 |
| „ --a Vedic appurtenance | 373 |
| „ --'aṅga'—limbs of Veda | 459 |
| ' <i>Niṣekādih</i> ' | 229,245 |
| ' <i>Niṣeka</i> ' | 250 |
| <i>Niṣkrāmana</i> ceremony | 278 |
| „ --to be performed in fourth month | 278 |
| „ --for <i>Shūdra</i> also | 278 |
| „ --according to family custom... .. | 278 |
| ' <i>Nivṛta</i> '—explained | 314-315 |
| „ --method, connected with sorcery | 315 |
| 'Non-duality' | 37 |
| 'Non-dualistic' | 29 |
| 'Non- <i>Kaṭha</i> ' | 260 |
| Nourishment | 74 |
| 'Northern Course' | 111 |
| North—Eating with face towards—leads to the True | 296 |
| <i>Nyāya-sūtra</i> | 28 |

O

| | |
|---|---------|
| Oblations—to <i>Pitrs</i> | 188-189 |
| Objects of Sense—Abstention from | 184 |
| Observances—Methods of | 151 |
| „ --make body godly | 251 |
| „ --for Vedic Study | 443 |
| „ --to be taught, after Initiation | 462 |
| Oceans | 60 |
| Ocean—Eastern | 235 |
| „ --Western | 235-236 |
| Officiating at Sacrifices—a function of <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> | 183 |
| 'Officiating Priest'—Meaning of | 423 |
| Offerings—make body godly | 251 |
| „ to deities—daily—by Religious Student | 465 |
| „ „ Sages — „ — „ | 465 |
| „ „ Fathers— „ — „ | 465 |
| 'Oh, Sir'—to be pronounced by way of salutation | 395 |
| ' <i>Om</i> '—to be pronounced in beginning and end of study of Veda | 332 |
| „ -- „ uttered—after three Breath-suspensions | 333 |
| „ --milked out of the three Vedas | 336 |
| „ --is the Highest Brahman | 347 |
| „ -- „ imperishable | 349 |
| „ -- „ <i>Brahma</i> | 349 |
| „ -- „ <i>Prajāpati</i> | 349 |

| | PAGE, |
|--|-------------|
| <i>Oṃkāra</i> | 386 |
| Occasional duties | 244 |
| Odour | 44 |
| Optional acts | 148, 255 |
| Organs | 48 |
| " —of sensation | 43, 49, 356 |
| " —Control of— explained | 327 |
| " —Control of | 355 |
| " —enumerated | 355 |
| " —of action | 357 |
| " — „ Mind | 357 |
| " —Attachment to— leads to success | 357 |
| " —Subjugation of— „ „ | 357 |
| " —not subjugated by mere abstinence | 359 |
| " —Oozing out of— leads to oozing out of wisdom | 362 |
| " —subdued, all purposes accomplished | 363 |
| Origin of World | 21 |
| <i>Oṣadhis</i> | 86 |
| <i>Oṣadhyah</i> | 86 |
| Over-eating— explained | 304 |
| " —destroys health | 305 |
| " —cuts off life | 305 |
| " —bars Heaven | 305 |
| " —to be avoided | 305 |
| Oviparous | 85 |

P

| | |
|--|----------|
| <i>Paippalādaka</i> | 178 |
| <i>Palāsha</i> | 238 |
| " wood- for Brāhmaṇa's staff | 289 |
| <i>Pañchālas</i> — comprised in <i>Brahmarṣidesha</i> | 234 |
| <i>Pañcharātra</i> | 174 |
| ' <i>Pañchasharāva Rite</i> ' | 263 |
| <i>Parameṣṭhi</i> | 211 |
| ' <i>Parāshara-gotra</i> ' | 467 |
| " — <i>Rṣis</i> of | 467 |
| <i>Pāramparya</i> | 233 |
| <i>Pāraskara</i> — prohibits a name ending in Nominal affix | 267 |
| <i>Pāraskara</i> — <i>Gṛhyasūtra</i> | 274 |
| ' <i>Parisañkhyā</i> ' | 241 |
| <i>Pāvana</i> | 245, 462 |
| <i>Pashu-sacrifice</i> | 283 |
| <i>Patañjali</i> | 219 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|----------------|
| <i>Parivrajaka</i> | 55 |
| <i>Pāshupata</i> | 174 |
| ' <i>Payah</i> '—stands for Merit | 376 |
| <i>Pāṇini</i> 4, 27, 35, 51, 58, 83, 87, 113, 137, 170, 199, 245, 281, 289, 302, 312, 313, 320, 326, 333, 360, 465, 375, 378, 386, 389, 392, 394, 396, 418, 425, 427, 433, 440, 454, 458, 500 | |
| Persons—entitled to performance of Dharma | 227 |
| Perennial trees | 87 |
| Philology | 209, 220 |
| <i>Pishitāshana</i> | 83 |
| <i>Pishācha</i> | 80, 83, 84, 85 |
| <i>Pilu</i> -wood—for Vaishya's staff | 289 |
| ' <i>Piṇḍānukūḍṛyaka</i> ' | 462 |
| <i>Pitr-tīrtha</i> | 305, 306, 307 |
| " —described | 308 |
| <i>Pitṛs</i> | 50, 138, 139 |
| " —Rules re offerings to | 152 |
| " —Day and Night of | 110 |
| <i>Pīṅgala</i> | 51 |
| Planets | 60 |
| Plants | 86 |
| Pleasure-Pain | 63-64, 90 |
| Pleasure | 220 |
| Pleiades | 60 |
| Poets | 77 |
| Porpoise | 85 |
| Power—is moral and physical strength | 279 |
| <i>Prakṛti</i> | 38 |
| <i>Prāṇa</i> | 99-100 |
| <i>Pradhāna</i> | 39 |
| Principles | 40, 48 |
| Pregnancy—Libations in connection with | 246-247 |
| <i>Prṣat</i> | 71, 82 |
| <i>Prāchināvīti</i> —explained | 314 |
| " method—sacred to <i>Pitṛs</i> | 315 |
| ' <i>Praiṣas</i> ' | 474 |
| <i>Prajāpati</i> 4, 20, 51, 58, 65, 67, 68, 71, 72, 76, 93, 102, 133, 136, 137, 182, 183, 466 | |
| " —milked the <i>Sāvitṛi</i> verse out of the Vedas | 336 |
| " —a name applied to <i>Kaśyapa</i> and other sages | 337 |
| ' <i>Prajāpālā</i> '—a name denoting 'power' | 268 |
| <i>Prājāpātya-tīrtha</i> | 305, 306, 307 |
| " —described | 308 |
| <i>Pravara</i> | 259 |
| <i>Pratiloma</i> castes | 236 |
| <i>Pranava</i> | 340 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|--|
| <i>Pranava</i> —to be pronounced in beginning and at end of Vedic— | |
| reading | 332 |
| " —expressed by <i>Oṅkara</i> | 336 |
| " —milked out of the Vedas | 336 |
| " —to accompany <i>Gāyatri</i> | 334 |
| <i>Prachetās</i> | 78 |
| 'Practice of good men'—A name applicable to what | 231 |
| Practice—explained... .. | 232 |
| " —of good men | 172, 205, 232 |
| " —based on greed and other visible causes—not author- itative | 175 |
| " A—uthority of—questioned | 176 |
| " —of cultured men | 205, 211 |
| " —" —" —means of knowing <i>Dharma</i> | 218 |
| " —" —" —Detraction of—censured | 218 |
| " —prompted by visible motive—not authoritative | 233 |
| Prayers | 180 |
| 'Priest'—meaning of | 423 |
| Priests | 72, 127 |
| Primordial Matter | 97 |
| ' <i>Prati dadāmi madhuno</i> ,' etc. | 257 |
| Prayāga | 235 |
| " —What is | 235 |
| <i>Prayija-Tanūnupat</i> | 260 |
| ' <i>Prastaram</i> ' | 252 |
| ' <i>Praharati</i> ' | 252 |
| Property—Division of | 152 |
| Protecting—a function of <i>Kṣatriya</i> | 134 |
| ' <i>Prēṣya</i> ' | 270 |
| 'Prosperity'—to be asked—of <i>Vaishya</i> —on meeting... .. | 398 |
| 'Production'—is birth in womb | 427 |
| Prohibition | 9, 200 |
| <i>Pulindas</i> | 236 |
| ' <i>Punyati</i> ' | 246 |
| ' <i>Punarman</i> , etc.—verse to be recited by Religious Student, on wet dreams | 474 |
| Purification | 152, 246 |
| <i>Putana</i> Offerings to | 273 |
| <i>Putidaru</i> —a scent | 469 |
| <i>Putralābha</i> —an auspicious name | 267 |
| ' <i>Pumai</i> ' | 262 |
| <i>Purinas</i> | 23, 27, 53, 56, 99, 113, 122, 179, 220 |
| Purity—of Mind and Speech—brings reward | 437 |
| Pursuit of Wealth and Pleasures— incompatible with knowledge of <i>Dharma</i> | 220 |
| <i>Puruṣa</i> | 35, 39, 48, 51, 262 |
| ' <i>Pumsavunu</i> ' | 247 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|--------|
| ' <i>Puṣṭi</i> ' | 270 |
| <i>Pulaha</i> | 78 |
| <i>Pulastya</i> | 78 |
| ' <i>Puryaṣṭaka</i> ' | 99-100 |
| Pupil—to begin study, when addressed by Teacher, ' Ho, Read ! ' | 330 |
| " — " stop, " " " ' Let there be a stop ! | 330 |
| " —specially qualified | 379 |
| " — " " —enumerated | 379 |
| " — " " —to be taught for the sake of Merit | 379 |
| " —Chastisement of | 436 |

Q

| | |
|--|-----|
| Quarters | 42 |
| Quarelling—to be avoided by Religious Student | 473 |

R

| | |
|--|----------------|
| <i>Ruhasya</i> —explained... .. | 420 |
| Rains | 131 |
| Rainbow | 81 |
| Rajas | 44 |
| ' <i>Rājan</i> '—stands for <i>Kṣātriya</i> | 277 |
| <i>Rākṣa</i> | 270 |
| " —connoted by <i>Kṣātriya</i> 's name | 270 |
| ' <i>Rasu</i> '—Various meanings of | 470 |
| <i>Rākṣasa</i> | 61, 80, 84, 85 |
| ' <i>Rāṇāyuniya</i> ' | 178 |
| <i>Rathāṅga</i> | 55 |
| <i>Rātri-satra</i> | 186, 199 |
| Rational beings—foremost among animate ones | 139 |
| <i>Raivata-Manu</i> | 107 |
| <i>Ravi</i> | 57-58 |
| Residence with Teacher—for women—serving of husband | 321 |
| Repetitions in Veda... .. | 214 |
| Resplendent One, The | 133 |
| Rewards—Hankering after | 221 |
| Resolution | 167-168 |
| Recompense—None possible for parents | 522 |
| Reasonings | 209-213 |
| Recollection—not imaginary | 190 |
| " —based on Veda | 190 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Religious Student--should not touch foot of Teacher's young wife | 510 |
| " - may salute young wife of Teacher on the ground | 512 |
| " --should not be in village, after sunrise or sunset | 513 |
| " -- " raise arms at times of study ... | 495 |
| " -- " daily attend to Twilights ... | 516 |
| " -- " remain well-behaved ... | 495 |
| " -- " " guarded ... | 495 |
| " -- " eat food inferior to Teacher's ... | 496 |
| " --may accept food, offered with respect ... | 440 |
| " --should sleep after the Teacher ... | 496 |
| " -- " avoid gazing at women ... | 470 |
| " -- " " Lying | 473 |
| " -- " fast for the day, if the sun rises while he is asleep ... | 514 |
| " -- " avoid injuring others ... | 471 |
| " --sleeping at sunrise or sunset, incurs grievous sin | 516 |
| " --should always sleep alone ... | 474 |
| " -- " not allow his manhood to run out ... | 474 |
| " -- " do what is done by juniors, if it is good ... | 517 |
| " -- " " that in which his mind finds satisfaction ... | 517 |
| " --breaks his vow, if manhood intentionally allowed to run out ... | 474 |
| " --on wet dreams, should recite the verse 'Punarmam' ... | 474 |
| " --should fetch jar of water ... | 475 |
| " " flowers ... | 475 |
| " " cowdung ... | 475 |
| " " Earth ... | 475 |
| " " Kusha-grass ... | 475 |
| " -- " beg alms ... | 475 |
| " -- " fetch „ from houses not devoid of Veda and Sacrifices ... | 476 |
| " -- " not beg alms from Teacher's family.. | 477 |
| " -- " " " " paternal or maternal relations ... | 477 |
| " -- may beg from these, when other houses not available ... | 477 |
| " -- " beg all over the village ... | 478 |
| " --should avoid persons of ill-repute ... | 478 |
| " -- " place fuel on Fire ... | 465 |
| " -- " make daily offerings to Deities ... | 465 |
| " -- " " " " Sages ... | 465 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|---|
| Religious Student—should make daily offerings to Fathers ... | 465 |
| „ — „ worship deities ... | 465 |
| „ — „ live with his Teacher ... | 464 |
| „ — „ observe all rules ... | 464 |
| „ — „ subjugate organs ... | 464 |
| „ —to abstain from honey ... | 469 |
| „ — „ „ meat ... | 469 |
| „ — „ „ scent ... | 469 |
| „ — „ „ garland ... | 469 |
| „ — „ „ flavours ... | 469 |
| „ — „ „ women ... | 469 |
| „ — „ „ killing ... | 469 |
| „ — „ „ anointing ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ collyrium ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ shoes... ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ umbrella ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ attachment ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ anger... ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ avarice ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ dancing ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ singing ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ playing on musical instru- ments ... | 472 |
| „ — „ „ gambling ... | 473 |
| „ — „ „ quarrel ... | 473 |
| „ — „ „ calumniating ... | 473 |
| <i>Īk</i> ... | 57, 177 |
| ' <i>Īkṣa</i> '—means stars ... | 368 |
| <i>Īgveda</i> ... | 4, 22, 29, 30, 37, 54, 55, 56, 58, 126, 178, 183, 188, 259, 387 |
| „ —Beginning of ... | 327 |
| „ —to be begun with words addressed by Teacher ... | 331 |
| „ <i>Shākhās</i> ... | 178 |
| Revealed Word—is Veda ... | 211 |
| „ —Relying on ... | 209 |
| „ —the only means of knowing Dharma ... | 220 |
| „ —following of the—leads to Supreme Happiness ... | 210 |
| „ —is the 'highest authority' ... | 220 |
| Renunciation ... | 152 |
| „ —futile, if disposition vitiated ... | 360 |
| Restraints— „ „ „ ... | 360 |
| „ „ „ „ „ ... | 167-168 |
| Reverence—for elders, brings longevity, merit, fame and strength ... | 391 |
| Return-greeting—One ignorant of—does not deserve to be saluted ... | 397 |
| Respects—Degrees of ... | 406 |
| „ —Grounds of ... | 407 |
| Relation—a ground of respect „ „ „ „ „ | 409 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|----------------|
| Rescension—only <i>one</i> to be studied, for title to rituals ... | 411 |
| Reverence—Brāhmaṇa should shrink from ... | 440 |
| Regions ... | 74 |
| Recluse—Duties of ... | 152 |
| Reptiles ... | 84 |
| Rites of Impregnation—Performer of—is called 'Guru' ... | 422 |
| Right Conduct ... | 149, 402 |
| Rivers ... | 60 |
| Rinsing—scriptural ... | 298 |
| „ —of mouth, after food ... | 298 |
| „ —reiterated ... | 299 |
| Right Behaviour ... | 149 |
| „ —one of the first duties taught after Initiation ... | 324 |
| „ —explained ... | 324 |
| „ —What is ... | 169 |
| Righteous pupil—to be taught for Merit ... | 379 |
| „ person ... | 172 |
| Right and Wrong ... | 21, 23 |
| <i>Rikṭi</i> dates—not commended ... | 266 |
| Root Evolvent ... | 49, 67, 68, 93 |
| 'Root of Dharma'—Another explanation of ... | 189 |
| <i>Rohiṇi</i> ... | 60 |
| Roaming deer ... | 237 |
| <i>Rṣis</i> ... | 7, 37 |
| <i>Rtviks</i> ... | 59 |
| <i>Rtu</i> ... | 72 |
| 'Rudimentary Elements' ... | 38, 120 |
| „ Substances ... | 44, 45, 48, 49 |
| Rudra ... | 55, 480 |
| Rules for Religious Student ... | 464 |
| <i>Ruru</i> deer—Skin of—for Kṣātriya Brahmacāri ... | 284 |
| ' <i>Ruru</i> ' ... | 284 |

S

| | |
|--|--------------------|
| Sacrifices—proceed from Thought ... | 167 |
| „ —make body godly ... | 251 |
| Sacrificial act—Land fit for ... | 236 |
| Sacrificial Thread—hempen for Kṣātriya ... | 288 |
| „ —woollen „ Vaishya ... | 288 |
| „ —of cotton „ Brāhmaṇa ... | 288 |
| „ —worn over the shoulder ... | 288 |
| „ —triple ... | 288 |
| „ —twisted upwards ... | 288 |
| „ —may be of silk also ... | 289 |
| Sacraments ... | 227, 245, 246, 255 |
| „ —Rules relating to ... | 151 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|--------------|
| Sacraments—Persons for whom prescribed—are entitled to | |
| Scripture | 227 |
| „ —bring about spiritual effects... .. | 247 |
| „ — „ natural „ | 247 |
| „ —subserve purposes of actions and rites | 248 |
| „ —mentioned along with non-sacraments... .. | 256 |
| „ —for females | 320 |
| „ — „ —all, but without <i>mantra</i> | 320 |
| „ —summed up | 332 |
| Sacramental rites—Performer of—is ‘Guru’ | 422 |
| Sacred Thread—stands during Observances also | 463 |
| „ —Damaged—to be thrown into water | 315, 463 |
| „ —to be replaced... .. | 315 |
| Sacrificial Initiation—means ‘Fire-kindling’ | 459 |
| ‘Sanctified in self’—explained | 442 |
| <i>Saptāḍas</i> | 468 |
| <i>Samānodakas</i> | 468 |
| ‘ <i>Sandhyām</i> ’ | 365 |
| <i>Sarasvatī</i> | 231 235, 480 |
| <i>Sāmaveda</i> | 4, 58 |
| „ —Beginning of | 327 |
| „ — <i>Shūklhūis</i> of | 178 |
| <i>Sāman</i> — <i>Bṛhat</i> | 312 |
| „ — <i>Rathantara</i> | 312 |
| <i>Sāman</i> | 57, 177, 331 |
| ‘ <i>Sāvitrīmātrasāraḥ</i> ’... .. | 388 |
| <i>Sāvitrī</i> —Birth through—real | 428 |
| „ —‘Mother,’ at second, Brahmic, birth | 459 |
| „ verso—Each foot of—milked out of each of the three Vedas | 336 |
| „ —Exclusion from | 282 |
| „ —Reciting of—at twilights | 337 |
| „ —repeated, preceded by <i>Vyāhṛtis</i> | 337 |
| „ —stands for <i>Upanayana</i> | 280 |
| „ —repeated at twilights, brings Vedic merit | 337 |
| „ —with ‘Om’ and ‘Mahāvāhṛtis,’ is Mouth of ‘Brahman’ | 346 |
| „ —Daily reciting of—for three years—leads to Supreme | |
| Brahman | 347 |
| „ —Nothing higher than | 347 |
| „ —to be repeated at twilights | 364 |
| „ — „ „ in morning, standing | 364, 369 |
| „ — „ „ „ evening, seated | 364, 369 |
| „ —recited in morning twilight, destroys night’s sin .. | 369 |
| „ — „ „ evening „ „ day’s „ | 369 |
| „ —to be recited with clean body and collected mind | 311 |
| „ — „ seated on <i>kusha</i> -grass | 372 |
| „ —lapses for Brāhmaṇa, in sixteenth year | 280 |
| „ — „ Kṣātriya „ twenty-second year | 280 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>Savitri</i> —lapses for Vaishya, in twenty-fourth year ... | 280 |
| Salutation—Rules regarding ... | 387 |
| „ —Formulas of ... | 391, 395 |
| „ —to one who imparts knowledge ... | 387 |
| „ —of illiterate elders—Formula for ... | 393 |
| „ — „ elders brings longevity, merit, fame and strength ... | 391 |
| „ — „ women ... | 393, 394 |
| „ —Form of returning ... | 396, 398 |
| „ —One ignorant of proper form of returning greeting—does not deserve ... | 397 |
| Salutation ... | 1 |
| <i>Satra</i> —Daily reciting of Veda, is ... | 375 |
| ' <i>Satra</i> '—a sacrifice ... | 288 |
| <i>Sāmidhēni</i> verses ... | 299 |
| ' <i>Samāsena</i> ' ... | 243 |
| ' <i>Sambhuvashcha</i> ' ... | 243 |
| ' <i>Samskṛa</i> ' ... | 245 |
| ' <i>Sakti</i> 'juhoti' ... | 240 |
| ' <i>Sāvitra</i> ' ... | 251 |
| ' <i>Samidhamādadhyat</i> ' ... | 252 |
| ' <i>Saudāmini</i> ' ... | 81 |
| Satiation ... | 64 |
| <i>Saurya</i> ... | 54 |
| <i>Sunriya</i> ... | 163 |
| <i>Saurya charu</i> ... | 13 |
| ' <i>Sauryañcharunnirūpet</i> ' ... | 181 |
| ' <i>Samayā</i> ' ... | 225 |
| ' <i>Samayādhyaṣita</i> ' ... | 225-226 |
| ' <i>Satyakāma Jābala</i> ' ... | 283 |
| <i>Sāntarālāḥ</i> ... | 234 |
| ' <i>Sadasat</i> ' ... | 36 |
| ' <i>Samsāra</i> ' ... | 154 |
| ' <i>Saputrā</i> '—benedictory female name ... | 272 |
| ' <i>Samvatsara</i> ... | 129 |
| <i>Sadbhū</i> ... | 158, 160 |
| <i>Saura</i> ... | 130 |
| Sacrifice ... | 54, 57, 125, 127, 132, 212 476 |
| „ —futile, if disposition vitiated ... | 360 |
| <i>Sāvana</i> ... | 138 |
| Sacrificing—a function of the Brāhmana ... | 133 |
| „ — „ „ Kṣatriya ... | 134 |
| „ — „ „ Vaishya ... | 135 |
| Sacrificial act ... | 224 |
| „ —may be done at sunrise ... | 224 |
| „ — „ „ dawn ... | 224 |
| „ — „ „ before sunrise ... | 224 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------------------|
| Scorned Brāhmaṇa—goes about in comfort | 441 |
| Scorner—perishes | 441 |
| Serving of Teacher—helps acquisition of learning | 513 |
| Service—function of the Shūdra | 136 |
| “ of Parents and the Preceptor—the Highest Austerity | 523 |
| Self-controlled Brāhmaṇa—knowing Sāvitri alone—better than the uncontrolled one knowing entire Veda | 388 |
| Seniority—by knowledge—among Brāhmaṇas | 433 |
| “ — „ valour — „ Kaṣṭtriyas | 433 |
| “ — „ riches — „ Vaishyas | 433 |
| “ — „ age — „ Shūdras | 433 |
| Sister—food to be begged from—after Initiation | 204 |
| “ —Elder—to be treated as Mother | 403 |
| ‘ Sister ’—form of addressing an unrelated woman | 400 |
| Skin—prescribed—stands during Observances also | 403 |
| Skins—to be worn by <i>Brahmachāris</i> | 284 |
| “ —damaged—to be thrown into water | 315 |
| “ — „ „ replaced | 315 |
| Sins | 146 |
| Soma | 54, 184, 212, 375 |
| Soma-sacrifice | 285, 288 |
| Soma-Yāga—not found in <i>Āshvalāyana Shākhā</i> | 411 |
| Speech—Pure—brings reward | 437 |
| Spring | 131 |
| Spiritual Knowledge—Imparter of—to be saluted | 387 |
| “ relationship | 283 |
| “ merit and wealth—called ‘ good ’ | 519 |
| Speech | 61 |
| Shabara—quoted | 237 |
| Shabaras... .. | 236 |
| Sharat—a season | 186 |
| ‘ Sharman ’—the end of Brāhmaṇa’s name... .. | 267 |
| “ —an appendage to name | 268 |
| ‘ Shasvat-apa ’ | 374 |
| Shākyā | 173 |
| ‘ Shevadhīṣṭesmi ’ | 385 |
| ‘ Shatrunṭapa ’—a name connected with power | 268 |
| ‘ Shavaraka ’—a contemptible name | 269 |
| ‘ Sharmiṣṭhā ’—a harsh female name | 271 |
| ‘ Sharmavati ’—an auspicious female name... .. | 272 |
| Shakunika—Offerings to | 273 |
| ‘ Shaṇatāntavī ’ | 286 |
| Shatṛ affix | 296 |
| ‘ Sharīra saṃskāraḥ ’ | 245 |
| Shāstra | 5, 102 |
| Shatapatha Brāhmaṇa | 250 |
| Shākala-homa | 252 |
| ‘ Shīlā ’—explained | 201-202 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|---------------|
| ' <i>Shila</i> '—a source of knowledge of <i>Dharma</i> | 201 |
| " —Separate mention of—objected to | 202 |
| " — " " justified | 202 |
| " —What it stands for? | 202 |
| " and <i>Smṛti</i> conjunct | 203 |
| ' <i>Shiṣṭa</i> ' | 205 |
| 'Shoes'—to be avoided by Religious Student | 470 |
| Shoes and Umbrella—the least that can be presented to Teacher at Final Bath | 537 |
| <i>Shiras</i> —to accompany <i>Gāyatri</i> | 334 |
| <i>Shoḍaśi</i> vessel | 174, 207 |
| <i>Shrāddha</i> —performed by son—benefits father | 486 |
| " —results accruing to others from—discussed | 486 |
| <i>Shraviṣṭhā</i> —the starting point of 'lunar-asterisms' | 266 |
| <i>Shreyasī</i> —a heart-captivating female name | 272 |
| <i>Shūdra</i> | 72, 246 |
| " —All equal to—before <i>Upanayana</i> | 461 |
| " —to be asked his 'freedom from disease' | 398 |
| " —in the tenth stage of life—deserves respect | 414 |
| " —'wealth' and 'relations'—not grounds of respect for | 415 |
| " —Seniority among—by age | 433 |
| " —Offering of leavings to | 304 |
| " —No sacraments for—with <i>mantra</i> | 263 |
| " —Name of—should be contemptible | 267 |
| " — " — " expressive of 'submissiveness' | 269 |
| " —No Tonsure for | 275 |
| " —Functions of | 136 |
| " —Duty of | 152 |
| " —may reside in any land | 239 |
| " —studying scripture | 227-228 |
| " —to obtain knowledge of scriptures through <i>Brāhmaṇs</i> | 229 |
| ' <i>Shreyas</i> '—good | 436 |
| ' <i>Shrutopakriyaya</i> ' | 429 |
| ' <i>Shrutiratharvāṅgirasih</i> ' | 179 |
| <i>Shruti</i> — <i>Dharma</i> —Expounded in | 149 |
| <i>Shruti</i> | 160 |
| ' <i>Shriyan</i> ' | 296-297 |
| ' <i>Shri</i> ' | 296 |
| ' <i>Shyena</i> ' | 187, 278, 411 |
| " —Result accruing to other than the performer of | 278 |
| " —not in the <i>Āshvalāyana Shākhā</i> | 441 |
| <i>Shurasenakas</i> —comprised in <i>Brūhmarṣidesha</i> | 234 |
| Sister—One shall not sit alone with | 512 |
| <i>Smṛti</i> ... 12, 102, 149, 162, 166, 175, 198, 222, 233, 334, 315, 336, 309, 378 | 461 |
| " —equal to <i>Veda</i> | 212 |
| " —based on " | 172 |
| —a means of knowing <i>Dharma</i> | 231 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------------|
| <i>Smṛti</i> --Heterodox | 173 |
| „ --Detracting of--censured | 218 |
| „ --Foundation of authority of--discussed | 191 |
| „ --Alternative views about | 191 |
| „ -- „ „ --set forth in <i>Vivaraṇa</i> | 191 |
| „ and Veda--Close connection between | 192 |
| „ „ --Conflict between | 193, 196 |
| „ „ -- „ „ --not optional | 193 |
| „ --Vedic texts in support of--inferred | 197 |
| „ --Writers of--related to Veda | 197 |
| „ --texts | 226 |
| „ --prompted by visible motive--not authoritative | 233 |
| „ --lay down duties | 253 |
| <i>Smṛtīviveka</i> --quoted | 10, 192, 198 |
| <i>Smṛtīvivarāṇa</i> --describes five kinds of Dharma | 243 |
| ' <i>Smṛtishīle cha tadvidim</i> ' | 189, 201, 204 |
| „ --explained | 204 |
| ' <i>Smṛtishīle</i> ' | 203 |
| <i>Smārta</i> Dharma | 176 |
| <i>Somapa</i> | 80 |
| Sound | 44 |
| „ --quality of <i>Ākāśha</i> | 110 |
| „ --Portentous | 81 |
| Soul--Exit of individual | 98 |
| 'Southern Course' | 111 |
| Singing--to be avoided by Religious Student | 472 |
| Sick person--Way to be made for | 416 |
| Sipping of water--Exact quantity of | 312 |
| „ --Pitṛ way | 305 |
| „ --for Brāhmaṇa--enough to reach the heart | 312 |
| „ --Daiva way | 305 |
| „ --for Kṣātrīya--enough to reach the throat | 312 |
| „ --Prājāpatya way | 305 |
| „ --for Vaiśya--just sipped | 312 |
| „ -- „ Śūdra--just touching the end | 312 |
| „ -- „ „ --explained | 313 |
| „ --Methods of | 305 |
| „ --Receptacle for--the right hand | 314 |
| „ --Brāhma way | 305 |
| „ --thrice | 308 |
| Sipping of water--which is neither hot nor frothy | 310 |
| „ --to be done for cleanliness | 310 |
| „ --with face towards North or East | 310 |
| Slumber of the Divine Being | 94 |
| Slips | 86 |
| ' <i>Simantonnayana</i> ' | 247 |
| Silence--Truth better than | 347 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------|
| Sleeping on ground—to be continued by Initiated Boy, till Final Bath | 377 |
| Sprinkling | 249 |
| Spotted deer | 236 |
| <i>Sūitaka</i> | 300,304 |
| Son—One's own—to be taught for Merit | 379 |
| Source of knowledge of Dharma—Relevancy of | 172 |
| South—Eating, with face towards —brings fame | 296 |
| 'Soul'—stands for the Heart and the Navel | 309 |
| “ Great | 96 |
| “ —Welfare of | 149 |
| Staff—Damaged—to be thrown into water | 315 |
| “ “ “ “ replaced | 315 |
| “ —of <i>Bilva</i> and <i>Palāsha</i> —for Brāhmaṇa | 289 |
| “ — “ <i>Vaṭa</i> and <i>Khadira</i> — “ Kṣātriya | 289 |
| “ — “ <i>Pilu</i> and <i>Udumbara</i> — “ Vaiśya | 289 |
| “ — “ Brāhmaṇa—should reach his hair | 290 |
| “ — “ Kṣātriya— “ “ “ forehead | 290 |
| “ — “ Vaiśya “ “ “ nose | 290 |
| “ —denotes the particular shape of wood carried | 290 |
| “ —Qualities of | 291 |
| Stars | 81 |
| Standing and sitting—for the life-long Student | 589 |
| ' <i>Sthānāsanavihāravin</i> ' | 589 |
| Studentship—unflinchingly kept—leads to Highest Place | 589 |
| 'Stealing of Veda'—explained... .. | 386 |
| Student—Avowed—to subsist on alms | 480 |
| “ — “ —subsisting on alms, is equal to Fasting | 480 |
| “ — Learning to be imparted to pure | 385 |
| “ — “ “ “ self-controlled | 385 |
| “ — “ “ “ qualified | 385 |
| Study | 3 |
| “ —a function of the Brāhmaṇa | 133 |
| “ — “ “ Kṣātriya | 134 |
| “ — “ “ Vaiśya | 135 |
| “ — Course and Method of | 442 |
| “ — Rules of | 326 |
| “ —with face to the north | 326 |
| “ —after sipping water | 326 |
| “ —with hands in ' <i>Brahmānjali</i> ' form | 326 |
| “ — “ light clothing | 326 |
| “ — “ organs under control | 326 |
| “ —of Veda—At beginning and end of—Teacher's feet to be clasped | 327 |
| “ — “ —with joined palms | 327 |
| “ — “ —to begin and end with ' <i>Om</i> ' | 332 |
| “ —Meaning of 'beginning' of | 328 |
| “ —seated on <i>kusha</i> grass | 333 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|---------------------|
| <i>Strī ratnam duṣkulāṭ</i> | 529 |
| <i>Suktavākana</i> | 352 |
| Summer | 131 |
| <i>Sukhādi</i> group | 293 |
| ' <i>Sushliṣṭāngi</i> '—a harsh female name | 271 |
| ' <i>Suvadanā</i> ' | 271 |
| Supreme Being | 26, 37, 53 |
| „ Brahman | 1, 27, 96, 348 |
| „ Bliss | 181 |
| „ God | 253 |
| „ Lord | 31, 33, 39, 41, 124 |
| „ Self | 99 |
| „ Soul | 96, 99 |
| „ happiness obtained | 210 |
| <i>Sūrya</i> | 468 |
| <i>Sudeva</i> | 183 |
| Sub-castes | 231, 234 |
| Subtile | 28, 66, 100 |
| „ components | 44, 45, 46, 47 |
| Subtle body | 99 |
| <i>Sūtras</i> | 2 |
| Sun | 32, 108-109 |
| Sun-god | 74 |
| „ —to be worshipped, before going for alms | 291 |
| Sunrise | 174 |
| „ —for sacrificial acts | 224 |
| „ —Before—time'for sacrificial acts | 224 |
| Sustaining | 47 |
| <i>Sūriti</i> | 55 |
| Summing up—of Discourse II | 243 |
| „ — „ Section on Sacraments | 322 |
| <i>Suparṇa</i> | 80 |
| Subsidiary Sciences—not to be learnt before Veda | 456 |
| Superior—One should rise on approach of | 389 |
| „ — „ „ not sit on same couch with | 389 |
| „ — „ „ „ seat prepared for | 389 |
| „ —addressing a younger—Form of | 401 |
| „ —Behaviour towards | 505 |
| <i>Svadhā</i> offering—Excepting—no Vedic texts to be pronounced before Upanayana | 461 |
| ' <i>Svadhya</i> ' | 251, 373, 376 |
| <i>Svarochiṣa Manu</i> | 107 |
| <i>Svāyambhuva Manu</i> | 108, 107, 143, 230 |
| ' <i>Svastyana</i> ' | 147 |
| ' <i>Svapoṣam puṣṭah</i> ' | 62 |
| ' <i>Svayambhu</i> ' | 11 |
| Sweat-born | 85-86 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------------|
| Teacher—Well-being of—to be looked after by Initiated Boy, | |
| till Final Bath | 377 |
| — Gifts for—enumerated | 537 |
| — Son of—a specially qualified pupil | 379 |
| — — —to be taught for Merit... | 379 |
| Tenderness | 70 |
| Temporal act | 169 |
| knowledge—Imparter of—to be saluted | 387 |
| Tendrils | 90 |
| Terrestrial | 85 |
| Tenth day—indicates end of impurity | 265 |
| Tenth stage of life—a tile of respect for Shūdra | 414 |
| — — Way to be made for one in the | 416 |
| Text of Treatise | 105 |
| Thighs | 74, 133 |
| Thickets | 90 |
| Threshing of corn | 248 |
| Theft | 127, 199 |
| Thought—origin of Desire | 167 |
| — — — Sacrifices | 167 |
| — — — Vows | 167 |
| — — — Restraints | 167 |
| — — What is | 167 |
| — — precedes Desire and Volition | 167 |
| Thread—Sacrificial—worn over shoulder | 288 |
| — — — of cotton, for Brāhmaṇa | 288 |
| — — — hempen, — Kṣātrīya | 288 |
| — — — woollen, — Vaiśya | 288 |
| — — — worn single or threefold, at sacrifices | 288 |
| — — — may be of silk also | 289 |
| Time | 93 |
| — Creator of | 60 |
| — Measures of | 108 |
| — Cycles of | 112, 113, 114 |
| Tonsure | 9, 246, 274 |
| — during first or third year | 274 |
| — not for Shūdra | 275 |
| Tortoise | 85 |
| Touching with water—the cavities | 308 |
| — — — head | 308 |
| — — — soul | 308-309 |
| Touch | 44 |
| — quality of Wind | 120 |
| Touchableness | 248 |
| Transcendental | 9 |
| Transmigration of Soul | 100, 154 |
| Trees | 91, 139 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|--------------------|
| <i>Treta</i> | 114, 128, 131, 132 |
| Truth | 125-136 |
| „ —better than silence | 347 |
| Truthfulness | 70, 73 |
| Trade—a function of the Vaishya | 135 |
| ‘ <i>Tṛāḍivankasaḥ</i> ’ | 139 |
| Tradition | 233-234 |
| Triad of Fires—Father, Mother and Preceptor | 524 |
| Treatise | 2 |
| „ on Dharma—should supply definitions and explanations | 314 |
| Transference—Instance of | 205 |
| <i>Tr̥stup</i> —metre for initiation of Kṣātriya | 281 |
| „ —related to Kṣātriya | 282 |
| ‘ <i>Traizidya</i> ’ | 458, 462 |
| Triad—of <i>Gāyatri</i> —to be repeated a 1000 times | 352 |
| Twice-born persons | 216, 245-246 |
| „ —Meaning of the term | 458 |
| „ castes | 2 0 |
| „ —The first birth of—is from mother | 458 |
| „ persons—should resort to qualified countries | 239 |
| „ —The second birth of the—after Upanayana | 458 |
| „ —signification of their living in specified countries | 240 |
| „ —The third birth of the—after Sacrificial Initiation | 458 |
| „ name—based upon physical birth and Upanayana | 458 |
| „ man, should learn Veda | 442 |
| „ „ accumulate sanctity for Vedic learning | 442 |
| „ „ dwell with his Teacher | 442 |
| „ „ be ‘ <i>sanctified in self</i> ’ | 442 |
| „ —reading Veda daily—undergoes highest penance | 455 |
| „ —labouring over other things, without learning Veda—becomes a Shūdra | 456 |
| „ —Taint of womb removed from | 246 |
| Twilight—Repeating <i>Sāvitrī</i> at | 337 |
| „ —Meaning of | 366 |
| „ —Not standing at morning, and not sitting at evening—leads to being treated as Shūdra | 370 |
| „ Prayers | 338 |
| „ „ —compulsory | 338 |
| „ „ —Section dealing with | 364 |
| „ „ —during <i>Sāvitrī</i> —to be repeated till the Sun rises | 364 |
| „ „ — „ — „ „ stars appear | 364 |
| „ „ —‘ <i>Om</i> ’ with every <i>mantra</i> to be pronounced at | 332 |
| „ Devotions—one of the first duties taught after Initiation | 324 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Twilight devotions—explained | 325 |
| " " —to be daily attended to | 325 |

U

| | |
|---|--------------------|
| 'U' letter—milked out of the Vedas | 336 |
| 'Ubhayatod'atah' | 85 |
| 'Udagayanam' | 111 |
| Udgatṛ | 125 |
| 'Udite' | 225 |
| " hotavyam' | 225 |
| Udumbara wood—for Vaishya's staff | 289 |
| Udāna | 99 |
| Udbhid | 86, 183-184 |
| Udbhijja | 86 |
| Umbrella—to be avoided by Religious Student | 472 |
| Umbrella and Shoes—least that can be presented to Teacher at Final Bath | 537 |
| Umbilical cord—Before the cutting of | 257 |
| Unseen | 458 |
| Unmanifest | 26, 122 |
| Universal Dissolution | 22 |
| Untruthfulness | 216 |
| Unreliability | 216 |
| Uṅcles—Form of greeting younger | 401 |
| " —Wife of—to be treated like Teacher's wife | 402 |
| 'Upajāyante' | 86 |
| 'Upādhyāya'—Meaning of the title | 421 |
| " —One who teaches for a living, is | 421 |
| " " " part only of Veda, is | 421 |
| " " " Subsidiary Sciences, is | 421 |
| " —distinct from 'Āchārya' | 421 |
| 'Upasparshana' | 299 |
| Upaniṣads | 360 |
| " —called 'Vedānta' | 420 |
| " —Bhāṣya—referred to | 348 |
| " —Taittirīya | 348 |
| " —Chhândogya | 348 |
| " —Maitri | 348 |
| " —are esoteric treatises | 419 |
| Upanayana | 241, 245, 247, 276 |
| " —is real, imperishable and immortal 'Birth' | 428 |
| " —called 'Vedic birth' | 422 |
| " —in eighth year, for Brāhmaṇa | 276 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| <i>Upanayana</i> --in eleventh year for <i>Kṣātriya</i> | 276 |
| " -- " twelfth " " <i>Vaiśya</i> | 276 |
| " --marked by girdle-tying | 459 |
| " --Other names for | 276 |
| " --name of a sacrament | 276 |
| " -- in fifth year for Brāhmaṇa boy desiring Brahmic glory | 277 |
| " -- " sixth " " <i>Kṣātriya</i> " " power... .. | 277 |
| " -- " eighth " " <i>Vaiśya</i> " " business | 277 |
| " --Age for--to be counted from conception | 279 |
| " --for Females--Marriage Rites | 321 |
| ' <i>Upavīta</i> ' --name of a peculiar manner of wearing cloth | 288 |
| ' <i>Upavītin</i> ' --explained | 314 |
| ' <i>Urvāṣi</i> ' -- | 80 |
| ' <i>Usage</i> ' -- | 6 |
| " --of a country--the conditions of reliability | 231 |
| " --Local--not authoritative | 232 |
| ' <i>Uterine relationship</i> ' | 283 |
| <i>Uttama Manu</i> | 107 |

V

| | |
|---|------------|
| <i>Vaiśya</i> | 8, 74, 227 |
| " --Name of--should connote ' prosperity ' | 269 |
| " -- <i>Upanayana</i> of--in thirteenth year | 276 |
| " --Initiation of--by <i>Jagatī</i> metre | 282 |
| " --' <i>Vishvārūpāṇi</i> ,' etc., is the <i>Sāvitrī</i> for | 282 |
| " --related to <i>Jagatī</i> metre | 282 |
| " -- <i>Brahmachāri</i> --to wear goat-skin | 284 |
| " -- " " " woollen cloth | 284 |
| " -- " " " hempen girdle | 285 |
| " -- " " " woollen Sacred Thread | 288 |
| " -- " " --to hold staff of <i>Pīlu</i> and <i>Udambara</i> | 289 |
| " --Duty of | 153 |
| " --Functions of | 185 |
| " --to be asked his ' Prosperity ' | 398 |
| " --Seniority among --by grains and riches | 433 |
| " --Staff of--to reach his nose | 290 |
| " -- <i>Keshānta</i> of--in twenty-fourth year | 319 |
| " --Naming of--after fifteenth day | 265 |
| " --Name of--to be associated with ' wealth ' | 267 |
| <i>Vijasaneya Samhitā</i> | 181 |
| <i>Vaidika</i> | 245, 387 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|---------------------------|
| Vaidika knowledge ... | 387 |
| Vaideha ... | 154 |
| 'Vaidikāṇḍ karmabhiḥ,' etc. ... | 203 |
| Vaiśeṣikas ... | 27, 37, 122 |
| 'Vaishvadeva' ... | 152 |
| Vaivasvat Manu ... | 107 |
| 'Vaishvadevīm sangrahiṇīm,' etc. ... | 181 |
| Vaishvānara sacrifice ... | 486 |
| 'Vājasaneyaka' ... | 178 |
| 'Vājapeya' ... | 186 |
| Vājapeya—not found in the Āshvaliyana <i>Shākhā</i> of R̥gveda ... | 411 |
| Vājasaneyins—The <i>Gr̥hya</i> of ... | 259 |
| Vanspati ... | 88-89 |
| Vārtika on <i>Pāṇini</i> ... | 245 |
| 'Varṇa-dharma' ... | 243 |
| 'Varṇāśrama-dharma' ... | 243 |
| Vāchaṣṭoma ... | 180, 199, 200 |
| Vasanta ... | 181 |
| 'Vasantāya Kapinjalān ālabhate' ... | 181, 186 |
| 'Vasat'—The syllable—maintains recitation of daily <i>mantras</i> ... | 375 |
| 'Vasatkṛtam' ... | 375 |
| Vampirist... .. | 214 |
| Vashīṣṭha ... | 34, 78, 334 |
| „ —a meritorious name ... | 268 |
| „ clan ... | 260 |
| Vāsuki ... | 80 |
| Vātsyāyana—author of a work on Arts ... | 387 |
| 'Vata'—wood for Kṣātriya's staff ... | 289 |
| 'Vāyā'—a meritorious name ... | 268 |
| Vāyu ... | 57, 58, 59 |
| Veda ... | 4, 53, 126, 129, 130, 158 |
| „ —Entire—to be learnt ... | 443, 467 |
| „ —Study of ... | 163 |
| „ — „ —extends to 'learning of its meaning' ... | 444, 445, 447 |
| „ —to begin with 'Om' ... | 332 |
| „ — „ end „ 'Om' ... | 332 |
| „ — „ be done, seated on <i>Kusha</i> ... | 333 |
| „ — „ „ with three <i>Prāṇāyāms</i> ... | 333 |
| „ —Syllables 'a,' 'u,' 'm,'—milked out of ... | 336 |
| „ —makes body godly ... | 251 |
| „ —to be learnt along with Esoteric Treatises ... | 443 |
| „ — „ by Austerities and Observances ... | 443 |
| „ —one or more—to be read ... | 443 |
| „ —extends to learning of its meaning ... | 444, 445, 447 |
| „ —Injunction of studying—implies comprehension of meaning ... | 440, 452 |
| „ —What it means exactly in the Injunction for Vedic study ? | 452 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Veda—the name applies to entire collection of <i>Mantra</i> and <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> | 452 |
| „ — applies to <i>portions</i> also... .. | 452 |
| „ — includes the <i>Subsidiary Sciences</i> | 453 |
| „ — to be constantly repeated by <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> desiring piety... .. | 454 |
| „ — Reciting of—is the ‘highest penance’ | 454 |
| „ — Without—one labouring over other things, makes one <i>Shūdra</i> | 456 |
| „ — three in number | 251 |
| „ — Injunction of study of | 259 |
| „ — Pronouncement of | 224 |
| „ — <i>Arthavādas</i> —authoritative | 186 |
| „ — <i>Mantras</i> -- „ | 186 |
| „ — <i>Names</i> -- „ | 186 |
| „ — Authority of entire—proved by argument | 187 |
| „ and <i>Smṛti</i> —A close connection between | 192 |
| „ — Certain texts of—may have been lost | 192 |
| „ — Loss of texts of | 198 |
| „ — embodies all knowledge | 208 |
| „ — is Revealed Word | 211 |
| „ — For imparting—Teacher is called ‘Father’ | 400 |
| „ — not to be pronounced, before <i>Upanayana</i> | 461 |
| „ — One is <i>Shūdra</i> , before being ‘born in’ | 461 |
| „ — Recitation of—for one year—pours out milk | 375 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ honey | 375 |
| „ — Expounder of—not to sow on barren soil | 383 |
| „ — ‘Stealing’ of—explained | 386 |
| „ — One who fills both ears with —should be regarded as <i>Father</i> and <i>Mother</i> | 424 |
| „ — Imparter of—more venerable than Progenitor | 426 |
| „ — <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> ’s ‘birth’ is | 426 |
| „ — For study of—the Twice-born man should accumulate sanctity | 442 |
| „ — „ — the Twice-born man should be ‘sanctified in self’ | 442 |
| „ — Rules for the study of | 326 |
| „ — At end of study of—Teacher’s feet to be clasped | 337 |
| „ — should be studied with joined palms | 327 |
| „ — Each foot of <i>Sāvitrī</i> —milked out of | 336 |
| „ — Reciting of—by Householder | 338 |
| „ — „ — futile—if disposition vitiated | 367 |
| „ — Daily reciting of—is <i>Satva</i> | 375 |
| „ and <i>Dharmashāstra</i> —above criticism | 211 |
| „ — is untruthful | 214 |
| „ — Inconceivable | 11,14 |
| „ — Authority of <i>mantras</i> of—questioned | 183 |
| „ — not untruthful | 214 |
| „ — is inconsistent | 214 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Veda</i> —not | 214 |
| " —contains repetitions | 214 |
| " —does not contain repetitions | 214 |
| " —Detractor of—' Inſide ' | 216 |
| " —a means of knowing <i>Dharma</i> | 218 |
| " --Eternal | 11,14 |
| " —Creation of | 57 |
| " --Declamatory paſſages in—authoritative | 184 |
| " —Authority of—questioned | 174 |
| " —Authority of entire—questioned | 182 |
| " —" non-injunctive paſſages—questioned | 182 |
| " —" declamatory paſſages—questioned | 182 |
| " —Authority of names—questioned in | 183-184 |
| " —the root ſource of <i>Dharma</i> | 172,180 |
| " —Contradictory ſtatements in | 174 |
| " —is ſource of <i>Dharma</i> —an eſtabliſhed fact | 176 |
| " —What it ſtands for? | 177 |
| " --Etymology of the word | 178 |
| " —Diviſions of | 178 |
| " —Paſſages deſcribing only three—are <i>Arthavāda</i> | 180 |
| <i>Vedāṅgas</i> | 219 |
| <i>Vedāṅga</i> | 1, 27 |
| ' <i>Vedānta</i> '—ſtands for canons of the <i>Veda</i> | 420, 436 |
| " —" <i>Upaniſads</i> | 420 |
| " —a name of <i>Upaniſad</i> | 420 |
| ' <i>Vedasiddhānta</i> ' | 437 |
| ' <i>Vedic birth</i> '—One who brings about—is Father | 429 |
| ' <i>Vedic Sacraments</i> —ſtands for <i>Upanayana</i> ' | 321 |
| ' <i>Vedic merit</i> '—Meaning of | 341, 367 |
| " —brought about by <i>Sāvitrī</i> , at Twilights | 337 |
| " —declaration | 164 |
| " Study | 3, 250-251, 346 |
| " —Injunction of | 259 |
| " Rites | 245 |
| " Sacrifices | 253 |
| " acts | 164 |
| " Commentaries | 220 |
| " anomaly | 87 |
| " Reſcenſion | 214, 258 |
| " Triad | 170 |
| Veneration—won by ſtudy | 434 |
| " —not won by age | 434 |
| Vertical Phosphoreſcence | 81 |
| <i>Veno</i> | 55 |
| Vegetable | 85, 90 |
| Vice | 63, 70, 73, 92, 99, 125-126 |
| <i>Vidhāna</i> | 11, 13 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------------------------|
| <i>Vidhi</i> | 14, 103 |
| <i>Vishvajit</i> | 13, 165, 182, 199, 254 |
| <i>Vishvāmītra</i> | 467 |
| <i>Vishvāmītra</i> —a meritorious name | 268 |
| <i>Vishākṣhin</i> —author of a work on Arts .. | 387 |
| <i>Vishvedevas</i> | 130, 181 |
| Vital Breaths—recovered by saluting elders | 390 |
| Village property .. | 163 |
| ' <i>Vishvadrūpaṇi</i> ,' etc.—is <i>Sāvitri</i> for <i>Vaishya</i> | 282 |
| <i>Viṣṇu</i> | 55, 204, 468 |
| ' <i>Viṣṇuryoniṅkalpayatu</i> ,' etc. | 229 |
| Virtues | 151 |
| „ —may be taken from all sources | 531 |
| ' <i>Viraj</i> ,' | 76-77 |
| <i>Virochana</i> | 80 |
| <i>Vivaraṇa</i> —sets forth arguments proving authority of entire Veda | 187 |
| <i>Vinashana</i> | 235 |
| „ —where the <i>Sarasvati</i> disappeared | 235 |
| Viviparous | 85 |
| <i>Vindhya</i> | 235-236 |
| <i>Vindhyaśāsin</i> | 98 |
| Virtue | 63, 70, 73, 92, 99, 125 |
| „ —loses one foot in each Cycle | 127 |
| „ and Vico | 63, 70, 73, 92, 99 |
| <i>Vivasvat-suta</i> | 107 |
| Vows | 167 |
| <i>Vṛkṣa</i> | 87-88 |
| <i>Vṛitra</i> | 80 |
| ' <i>Vrati</i> ,'—stands for Religious Student | 480 |
| ' <i>Vratya</i> ,' | 345-348 |
| „ —excluded from <i>Sāvitri</i> | 282 |
| „ —no relationship to be established with | 283 |
| <i>Vrihi</i> corn... .. | 384 |
| „ and <i>yava</i> | 270 |
| <i>Vyākaraṇa</i> | 220 |
| <i>Vyāhṛtis</i> | 340-341 |
| „ —to accompany <i>Gāyatri</i> | 334 |
| „ —The Injunction for use of—to be deduced | 337 |
| <i>Vyāsa</i> | 28, 98, 295, 299, 360 |
| ' <i>Vyatipāta</i> ,' | 206 |

W

| | |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Waking and Sleeping | 94 |
| „ —of <i>Brahmā</i> | 101 |

[illegible]

| | PAGE. |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| World | 25, 43 |
| " -creation | 38 |
| " --Trio of | 138 |
| " --Coming into existence of | 151 |

Y

| | |
|--|--------------------|
| 'Yadaṣṭākupalo bhavati,' etc. | 350 |
| Yāga | 225, 252 |
| " --is perishable | 350 |
| Yājñavalkya—referred to | 147, 335 |
| " --quoted | 331, 334, 341 |
| 'Yannavakapālāḥ,' etc. | 350 |
| Yama | 204 |
| 'Yāvajjivam' | 182 |
| Yajurveda Shākhās | 4, 29, 52, 58, 178 |
| " " --Beginning of | 327 |
| Yajña | 225 |
| Yājñā-hymns | 375 |
| Yajus | 57, 177 |
| Yajñīya-dēsha | 236 |
| Yajamāna | 400 |
| Yakṣa | 61, 80, 84, 205 |
| 'Yāñanā pratīnandanti,' etc. indicates Aṣṭakā | 274 |
| 'Yatṣureṇa mār'ayet,' etc. | 274 |
| 'Yashasyam' | 147 |
| Yava and Vrihi | 270 |
| 'Ye chānye Kechidīdṛśhāḥ' | 86 |
| 'Yoga'—stands for care | 363 |
| " -- " " well-regulated activity | 363 |
| Yogsūtra—quoted | 348 |
| Yonih | 243 |
| Yudhiṣṭhira | 7 |
| Yugas | 112 |
| " --of gods | 115 |
| " --Characteristics of | 131 |
| " --Variations in Dharma—in | 132 |

Z

| | |
|----------------------|-----|
| Zodiacal Sign | 266 |
|----------------------|-----|

Index to Vol. II.

(Parts I and II.)

A

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Accomplished Student—not to despise the ignorant ... | 419 |
| " " " " the poor ... | 419 |
| " " " " one of low birth ... | 419 |
| " " —shall perform Sacrifices ... | 475 |
| " " — " practise Charity ... | 479 |
| " " —to perform his own duty ... | 317 |
| " " —performing his own duty, attains the highest state ... | 317 |
| " " —shall not seek wealth by means of ‘clinging’ pursuits ... | 317 |
| " " —shall not seek wealth by means of for- bidden acts ... | 317 |
| " " —shall not seek wealth when he has it already ... | 317 |
| " " —shall not seek wealth from improper sources ... | 317 |
| " " —not to be addicted to sensual objects | 318 |
| " " —in the sense of one who has finished his study, but continues the obser- vances ... | 139 |
| " " —to be received with the Honey- Mixture ... | 138 |
| " " —observances of ... | 316 |
| " " — " ,—obligatory ... | 316 |
| " " —to avoid excessive addiction to sensual objects, by means of mental reflection | 318 |
| " " —to relinquish all impediments to study | 319 |
| " " —to maintain himself somehow ... | 319 |
| " " —to keep his dress in conformity with his age ... | 319 |
| " " —to keep his speech in conformity with his age ... | 319 |
| " " —to keep his thoughts in conformity with his age ... | 319 |
| " " —to keep his dress in conformity with his occupation ... | 319 |
| " " —when asked—shall give—without show- ing signs of displeasure ... | 479 |
| " " —shall not insult one with redundant limbs ... | 419 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Accomplished Student—shall not insult those with deficient limbs | 419 |
| “ “ —shall not insult those destitute of learning | 419 |
| “ “ —shall not insult very old men | 419 |
| “ “ —to keep his speech in conformity with his occupation | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his thoughts in conformity with his occupation | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his dress in conformity with his wealth | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his speech in conformity with his wealth | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his thoughts in conformity with his wealth | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his dress in conformity with his learning | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his speech in conformity with his learning | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his thoughts in conformity with his learning | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his dress in conformity with his family | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his speech in conformity with his family | 319 |
| “ “ —to keep his thoughts in conformity with his family | 319 |
| “ “ —to study Treatises enlivening Intelligence | 320 |
| “ “ —to study Treatises conducive to wealth | 320 |
| “ “ —to study Vedic Scriptures | 320 |
| “ “ — “ Itihâsas | 320 |
| “ “ — “ Purâṇas | 320 |
| “ “ — “ Science of Reasoning | 320 |
| “ “ — “ works of Bṛhaspati | 320 |
| “ “ — “ “ Ushanas | 320 |
| “ “ — “ Astronomy | 320 |
| “ “ — “ Medicine | 320 |
| “ “ — “ Science of Polity | 320 |
| “ “ —not to be proud of his austerities | 485 |
| “ “ —not to tell a lie, after sacrificing | 485 |
| “ “ —shall not revile the Brâhmaṇa | 485 |
| “ “ —shall not advertise his charity | 485 |
| “ “ —to study Exegesis | 320 |
| “ “ — “ Etymologies | 320 |
| “ “ — “ Grammar | 320 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Accomplished Student—to study Science of Interpretation... | 320 |
| " " —shall never omit the Five Sacrifices | 322 |
| " " —to offer the Agnihotra, morning and evening | 327 |
| " " —to offer the Darsha—at the end of the Half-month | 327 |
| " " —to offer the Pūrṇamasa—at the end of Half-month | 327 |
| " " —to perform Harvest Sacrifice .. | 330 |
| " " — " Adhvara Sacrifices ... | 330 |
| " " — " Animal Sacrifices ... | 330 |
| " " — " Soma Sacrifices ... | 330 |
| " " —Duties of | 341 |
| " " —suffering from hunger, should seek for wealth from the king ... | 341 |
| " " —suffering from hunger, should seek for wealth from one at whose sacrifice he officiates | 341 |
| " " —suffering from hunger, should seek for wealth from his pupils ... | 341 |
| " " —suffering from hunger, should seek for wealth from rich persons ... | 341 |
| " " —suffering from hunger, should seek for wealth from commended twice-born persons | 341 |
| " " —suffering from hunger, should seek for uncooked food from a Śhūdra, if submissive | 341 |
| " " —to worship God | 342 |
| " " —to live upon gifts made through love | 342 |
| " " —not to go about very early in the morning | 419 |
| " " —not to go about very late in the evening | 419 |
| " " —not to go about at midday ... | 419 |
| " " —not to go about with an unknown person | 419 |
| " " —not to go about with Śhūdras ... | 419 |
| " " —to live by pronouncing ' Svasti ' ... | 342 |
| " " —never to do service | 342 |
| " " —not to receive gifts, if he has property of his own | 342 |
| " " —not to wear torn or dirty clothes ... | 343 |
| " " —to observe personal cleanliness ... | 344 |
| " " —to keep his hair clipped ... | 344 |
| " " — " " beard .. | 344 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|----------|
| Accomplished Student—to keep his nails clipped ... | 344 |
| " " —shall wear white clothes ... | 344 |
| " " — " remain pure in all matters ... | 344 |
| " " — " engaged in Vedic study ... | 344 |
| " " — " " " in what is con- | |
| ducive to welfare ... | 344 |
| " " —to carry a bamboo stick ... | 344 |
| " " — " " water-pot filled with | |
| water ... | 344 |
| " " —shall wear the sacred thread ... | 344 |
| " " — " carry kusha grass ... | 344 |
| " " — " wear gold ear-rings ... | 344 |
| " " —not to look at the rising Sun ... | 347 |
| " " —not to look at the setting " ... | 347 |
| " " — " " eclipsed " ... | 347 |
| " " — " " " Sun reflected in | |
| water ... | 347 |
| " " —shall accumulate spiritual merit ... | 486 |
| " " —not to look at the Sun at midday ... | 347 |
| " " —should not step over the rope to | |
| which a calf is tied ... | 347 |
| " " —not to run while it is raining ... | 347 |
| " " —not to look at his own reflection in | |
| water ... | 347 |
| " " —has no companion in the other world | |
| except spiritual merit ... | 486 |
| " " —should pass by a clay mound, leaving | |
| it to the right ... | 347 |
| " " —should pass by a cow, leaving it to | |
| the right ... | 347 |
| " " —should pass by a deity, leaving it to | |
| the right ... | 347 |
| " " —should pass by a Brahmana, leaving | |
| him to the right ... | 347 |
| " " —should pass by clarified butter, leav- | |
| ing it to the right ... | 347 |
| " " —should pass by honey, leaving it to | |
| the right ... | 347 |
| " " —should pass by a cross-way, leaving | |
| it to the right ... | 347 |
| " " —should pass by well-known trees, | |
| leaving them to the right ... | 347 |
| " " —never to approach a woman in her | |
| courses ... | 348 |
| " " —never to sleep on the same bed with | |
| her while in her courses ... | 348, 349 |

| | | | |
|---|---|--|-----|
| Accomplished Student—by avoiding the woman in her | | | |
| courses, obtains strength, vitality, | | | |
| intelligence and longevity ... | | | 349 |
| " | " | —shall not eat with his wife ... | 349 |
| " | " | — " " look at his wife, while she | |
| | | is eating | 349 |
| " | " | —shall not look at his wife, while she | |
| | | is snoring | 349 |
| " | " | —shall not look at his wife, while she | |
| | | is yawning | 349 |
| " | " | —shall not look at his wife, while she | |
| | | is at her ease | 349 |
| " | " | —not to look at his wife applying col- | |
| | | lyrium to her eyes | 351 |
| " | " | —not to look at his wife when she is | |
| | | anointing herself | 352 |
| " | " | —not to look at his wife when she is | |
| | | uncovered | 352 |
| " | " | —not to look at his wife at the time | |
| | | of delivery | 352 |
| " | " | —shall not eat with only one piece of | |
| | | cloth on him | 352 |
| " | " | —shall not bathe naked | 352 |
| " | " | — " " urinate on the road ... | 352 |
| " | " | — " " " on ashes ... | 352 |
| " | " | — " " " on haunts of cows | 352 |
| " | " | — " " " on ploughed ground | 352 |
| " | " | — " " " in water ... | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " in an oven .. | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " on a mountain ... | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " in a ruined temple | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " on an ant-hill ... | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " in holes in which | |
| | | animals live ... | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " walking ... | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " standing ... | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " on river-bank ... | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " on mountain-top ... | 353 |
| " | " | —not to pass feces or urine—in front | |
| | | of wind | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " " —in front | |
| | | of Fire | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " " —in front | |
| | | of a Brāhmaṇa | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " " —in front | |
| | | of the Sun | 353 |

| | | | | | PAGE |
|-----------------------------|------|---|--|--|------|
| Accomplished Student—not to | pass | feces or urine—in front | | | |
| | | of water | | | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " " —in front of | | | |
| | | cows ... | | | 353 |
| " | " | — " " " " on bare ground ... | | | 354 |
| " | " | —should " " " on ground covered | | | |
| | | with leaves or grass | | | 354 |
| " | " | — " " " " with restrained speech | | | 354 |
| " | " | — " " " " with body covered | | | 354 |
| " | " | — " " " " facing North, during | | | |
| | | day ... | | | 355 |
| " | " | — " " " " facing South, at | | | |
| | | night ... | | | 355 |
| " | " | — " " " " facing north during | | | |
| | | Twilights .. | | | 355 |
| " | " | — " " " " facing any direction, | | | |
| | | in shade or darkness ... | | | 355 |
| " | " | — " " " " when there is danger | | | |
| | | | | | 355 |
| " | " | — shall not blow fire with his mouth... | | | 356 |
| " | " | — " " " look at a naked woman ... | | | 356 |
| " | " | — not to throw unclean things into Fire | | | 356 |
| " | " | — not to warm his feet at the Fire ... | | | |
| | | ... | | | 356 |
| " | " | — not to place Fire under himself ... | | | 356 |
| " | " | — not to step over Fire | | | ... |
| | | ... | | | 356 |
| " | " | — not to place Fire under his feet ... | | | 356 |
| " | " | — not to do anything dangerous to life | | | 356 |
| " | " | — not to eat at junction-time | | | ... |
| | | ... | | | 357 |
| " | " | — " sleep " " ... | | | 357 |
| " | " | — " travel " " ... | | | 357 |
| " | " | — " scratch the ground | | | ... |
| | | ... | | | 357 |
| " | " | — " remove his own garland ... | | | 357 |
| " | " | — " sleep alone in a deserted village | | | ... |
| | | ... | | | 358 |
| " | " | — " offer advice to his superior ... | | | 358 |
| " | " | — " converse with a woman in | | | |
| | | her courses | | | ... |
| | | ... | | | 358 |
| " | " | — " go to a sacrifice uninvited ... | | | 358 |
| " | " | — to uncover his right hand—in Fire- | | | |
| | | abode | | | 358 |
| " | " | — " uncover his right hand in | | | |
| | | cow-pen | | | 358 |
| " | " | — " uncover his right hand in the | | | |
| | | presence of Brāhmanas ... | | | 358 |
| " | " | — " uncover his right hand during | | | |
| | | Vedic recitation ... | | | 358 |

| | | | PAGE. |
|---|---|--|-------|
| Accomplished Student—not to uncover his right hand at the | | | |
| | | time of eating ... | 358 |
| " | " | — " prevent hieifer drinking water | |
| | | or milk ... | 359 |
| " | " | — " show rainbow to another person | 359 |
| " | " | — " dwell long in an unrighteous | |
| | | village ... | 359 |
| " | " | — " dwell in a village abounding | |
| | | in sickness ... | 359 |
| " | " | — " undertake a journey alone ... | 359 |
| " | " | — " reside in a mountain for long | 359 |
| " | " | — " dwell in a country with a | |
| | | Shōdra king ... | 360 |
| " | " | — " dwell in a country sur- | |
| | | rounded by unrighteous | |
| | | persons .. | 360 |
| " | " | — " dwell in a country inhabited | |
| | | by imposters ... | 360 |
| " | " | — " dwell in a country frequented | |
| | | by low castes ... | 360 |
| " | " | — " eat anything from which oil | |
| | | has been extracted ... | 361 |
| " | " | — to avoid gluttony ... | 361 |
| " | " | — not to eat very early in the morning | 361 |
| " | " | — " , " late in the evening | 361 |
| " | " | — " " in evening, if he has eat- | |
| | | en in morning ... | 361 |
| " | " | — to eat light food in the evening ... | 361 |
| " | " | — not to exert himself without pur- | |
| | | pose ... | 362 |
| " | " | — " drink water with joined palms | 362 |
| " | " | — " eat things kept in his lap ... | 362 |
| " | " | — " be too curious ... | 362 |
| " | " | — " dance ... | 362 |
| " | " | — " sing ... | 362 |
| " | " | — " play upon musical instru- | |
| | | ments ... | 362 |
| " | " | — " clap ... | 362 |
| " | " | — " grind his teeth ... | 362 |
| " | " | — " create enmity ... | 362 |
| " | " | — " wash feet in vessel of white | |
| | | brass ... | 363 |
| " | " | — " eat out of a broken dish ... | 363 |
| " | " | — " " " defiled " ... | 363 |
| " | " | — should not wear shoes worn by | |
| | | others ... | 364 |

| | | | | | PAGE. |
|--|---|---|---|--|-------|
| Accomplished Student—should not use sacred thread worn | | | | | |
| | | | | by others ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | " ornament worn by others ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | " garland worn by others ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | " water-pot used by others ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | travel with untrained beasts of burden ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | travel with diseased beasts of burden ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | travel with beasts of burden with injured horns ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | travel with beasts of burden with injured eyes ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | travel with beasts of burden with injured hoofs ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | travel with beasts of burden with disfigured tails ... | 364 |
| " | " | — | " | shall travel with trained beasts ... | 365 |
| " | " | — | " | and not goad them ... | 365 |
| " | " | — | " | shall avoid the early rising Sun ... | 365 |
| " | " | — | " | the smoke issuing from a dead body ... | 365 |
| " | " | — | " | a broken seat ... | 365 |
| " | " | — | " | shall not cut his own hair and nails ... | 365 |
| " | " | — | " | tear his nails with his teeth ... | 365 |
| " | " | — | " | crush clods of earth ... | 366 |
| " | " | — | " | cut grass with his nails ... | 366 |
| " | " | — | " | do an aimless act ... | 366 |
| " | " | — | " | " what is likely to end disgracefully ... | 366 |
| " | " | — | " | do backbiting ... | 367 |
| " | " | — | " | carry on a wrangling conversation ... | 368 |
| " | " | — | " | wear garlands above his clothing ... | 368 |
| " | " | — | " | " odourless garlands ... | 368 |
| " | " | — | " | ride on the bare backs of cows and oxen ... | 368 |

| | | | PAGE, |
|--|---|--|-------|
| Accomplished Student—shall not enter a walled village, | | except through the gate | 368 |
| " | " | —shall keep away, at night, from roots of trees ... | 368 |
| " | " | — " never gamble with dice ... | 369 |
| " | " | — " not carry his shoes ... | 369 |
| " | " | — " " eat, seated on bed ... | 369 |
| " | " | — " " " what has been placed in his hand ... | 369 |
| " | " | — " " " after sunset any food containing sesamum ... | 369 |
| " | " | — " never sleep naked .. | 369 |
| " | " | — " not go about with mouth unwashed ... | 369 |
| " | " | — " eat with wet feet ... | 370 |
| " | " | — " not sleep with wet feet ... | 370 |
| " | " | — " never approach a place difficult of access ... | 370 |
| " | " | — " " " a place which is invisible | 370 |
| " | " | — " " look at urine or excreta | 370 |
| " | " | — " " cross a river with his arms ... | 370 |
| " | " | — " " step on hair ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " bones ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " potsherds ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " cotton-seed ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " chaff ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " not associate with outcasts ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " Chândalas ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " Pulkasas ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " the illiterate ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " " haughty ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " " Antyas ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " " Antyâ-vasâyas ... | 372 |
| " | " | — " " offer advice to a Shûdra ... | 372 |
| " | " | — " " " leavings " " ... | 371 |
| " | " | — " " " what has been prepared for being offered to the gods ... | 372 |
| " | " | — " " expound the law to a Shûdra | 372 |
| " | " | — " " indicate any penance " ... | 372 |
| " | " | — " " instruct the Shûdra regarding details of shrâddha, etc., ... | 378 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Accomplished Student—shall give advice and teachings to the Shûdra dependent on him | 378 |
| " " — " not scratch his own head with both hands | 380 |
| " " — " never bathe without the head | 380 |
| " " — " avoid catching of the hair in anger | 381 |
| " " — " " striking on the head in anger | 381 |
| " " — " not accept gifts from a king not born of the Kṣattriya caste | 383 |
| " " — " " " " from slaughter-house-keepers | 383 |
| " " — " " " " from oil-press keepers | 383 |
| " " — " " " " from grog-shop keepers | 383 |
| " " — " " " " from brothel-keepers | 383 |
| " " — Daily duties of | 386 |
| " " — shall wake up at Brâhma-Muhûrta | 386 |
| " " — " on waking, think of Wealth and Merit | 386 |
| " " — " ponder the true meaning of the Veda | 386 |
| " " — " on waking, pay the calls of nature | 387 |
| " " — " perform the purifications (brushing off teeth, etc.) | 387 |
| " " — " repeat the Sâvitri, standing during morning | 387 |
| " " — " repeat the Sâvitri, standing during evening! | 387 |
| " " — " perform Twilight Devotions | 388 |
| " " — Vedic study by | 389 |
| " " — Shall perform Upâkarma on Full-moon day of Shrâvapa or Bhâdrapada | 389 |
| " " — after Upâkarma, shall study Vedas for four months and a half | 389 |
| " " — to perform Utsarjana (suspension) of Veda in Mâgha | 389 |
| " " — to desist from study for the night after Utsarjana | 390 |

| | | PAGE. |
|---|-----|---------|
| Accomplished Student — to study Veda regularly throughout | | |
| the Bright Fortnights | ... | 390 |
| " " — " subsidiary sciences throughout | | |
| the Dark Fort nights | ... | 393 |
| " " — not to recite Veda indistinctly | ... | 391 |
| " " — " " " near a Shūdra | ... | 391 |
| " " — not to go to sleep-in morning, after | | |
| Vedic study | ... | 391 |
| " " — to recite Rgveda, Sāmaveda and | | |
| Yajurveda, every day, in nor- | | |
| mal times | ... | 391 |
| " " — not to study the Veda on days un- | | |
| fit for study | ... | 393-402 |
| " " — to diligently recite Veda—when- | | |
| ever he finds time | ... | 423 |
| " " — Vedic Study, the primary duty of | | 423 |
| " " — remembers previous birth, by con- | | |
| stant recitation of Veda, by puri- | | |
| fication, by Austerity and by avoid- | | |
| ing injury to living beings | ... | 423 |
| " " — attains endless bliss by the study | | |
| of Veda | ... | 424 |
| " " — to offer oblations to Savitr, on special | | |
| days | ... | 425 |
| " " — " Purificatory Oblations on spe- | | |
| cial days | ... | 425 |
| " " — to worship the Pitrs on Aṣṭakas | ... | 425 |
| " " — " " on Anvaṣṭakas | ... | 425 |
| " " — to perform urination at a distance | | |
| from the dwelling-place | ... | 426 |
| " " — " feet-washing at a distance | | |
| from the dwelling-place | ... | 426 |
| " " — to throw food-leavings at a distance | | |
| from the dwelling-place | ... | 426 |
| " " — to perform evacuation of bowels | | |
| during forenoon | ... | 426 |
| " " — " Toilet " " " | ... | 426 |
| " " — " Bath " " " | ... | 426 |
| " " — " cleaning of the teeth | | |
| during forenoon | ... | 426 |
| " " — " Dying of the eyes | ... | 426 |
| " " — " worship of the gods dur- | | |
| ing forenoon | ... | 426 |
| " " — to go to the gods for protection | ... | 427 |
| " " — " the king " " " | ... | 427 |
| " " — " Righteous Brāhmanas for pro- | | |
| tection | ... | 427 |
| " " — " his superiors for protection | ... | 472 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Accomplished Student— shall salute his elders ... | 427 |
| " " — " give up his seat to elders ... | 427 |
| " " — " wait upon elders with joined palms ... | 427 |
| " " — " follow behind his elders ... | 427 |
| " " — " attend to Right Conduct ... | 427 |
| " " — " avoid everything dependent on others ... | 428 |
| " " — " pursue every act that depends on himself ... | 428 |
| " " — to do that act which brings satisfaction to his inner soul ... | 429 |
| " " — shall never injure his Preceptor ... | 430 |
| " " — " " " " Teacher ... | 430 |
| " " — " " " " Father ... | 430 |
| " " — " " " " Mother ... | 430 |
| " " — " " " " elder ... | 430 |
| " " — " " " " Bráhmaṇas ... | 430 |
| " " — " " " " cows ... | 430 |
| " " — " " " " any person performing austerities ... | 430 |
| " " — " " " " avoid atheism ... | 431 |
| " " — " " " " cavilling at the Vedas ... | 431 |
| " " — " " " " abusing the gods ... | 431 |
| " " — " " " " Hatred ... | 431 |
| " " — " " " " Haughtiness ... | 431 |
| " " — " " " " Pride ... | 431 |
| " " — " " " " Anger ... | 431 |
| " " — " " " " Hastiness ... | 431 |
| " " — " " " " not raise the rod against another ... | 431 |
| " " — by drawing blood from a Bráhmaṇa's body, undergoes suffering ... | 438 |
| " " — shall never threaten a twice-born person ... | 434 |
| " " — shall never strike a twice-born person ... | 434 |
| " " — " " spill the blood of a " " ... | 434 |
| " " — if unrighteous—is not happy ... | 434 |
| " " — whose wealth is misbegotten, is not happy ... | 434 |
| " " — who is addicted to injuring others is not happy ... | 434 |
| " " — shall not turn his mind to unrighteousness, even though suffering from Righteousness ... | 435 |
| " " — to delight in Truthfulness ... | 438 |
| " " — " " Law ... | 438 |
| " " — " " Right Conduct ... | 438 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Accomplished Student—to delight in Cleanliness ... | 430 |
| " " —to govern his Pupils according to Law | 438 |
| " " —shall keep his speech under control ... | 438 |
| " " — " " arms " " " | 438 |
| " " — " " belly " " " | 438 |
| " " —shall avoid unrighteous wealth ... | 439 |
| " " — " " " Pleasure ... | 439 |
| " " — " " Righteousness, if condu- | |
| cive to unhappiness ... | 439 |
| " " — " " Righteousness, if disap- | |
| proved by the people... | 439 |
| " " — " " fickleness of hands and feet | |
| " " — " " and speech and eyes ... | 441 |
| " " — " " crookedness ... | 441 |
| " " — " " harming others by Speech | |
| and Thought ... | 441 |
| " " — " " tread the path of the Righteous ... | 441 |
| " " — " " " trodden by his | |
| forefathers ... | 441 |
| " " — " " never quarrel with the officiating | |
| Priest ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " his Teacher ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " maternal | |
| uncle ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " guests ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " dependents | |
| " " — " " " " " children ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " old or sick per- | |
| sons ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " doctors ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " paternal rela- | |
| tions ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " marriage ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " parents ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " female relations | |
| " " — " " " " " Brother ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " Son ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " Wife ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " Daughter ... | 443 |
| " " — " " " " " Slaves ... | 443 |
| " " —when offended by wife, son, daughter, | |
| or any relative, shall bear it with- | |
| out heat ... | 444 |
| " " —shall not be addicted to receiving | |
| presents ... | 445 |
| " " —has his light extinguished by re- | |
| ceiving presents ... | 445 |

| | | | | | PAGE. |
|-----------------------|--|-----|--------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------|
| Accomplished Student- | shall avoid food seen by the Brāhmaṇa- | | | | |
| | slayer | ... | | | 461 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " touched by a woman |
| | | | | | in courses ... 461 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " pecked by birds ... 461 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " touched by dog ... 461 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " smelt by the cow ... 462 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " publicly offered ... 462 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " belonging to a multi- |
| | | | | | tude ... 462, 470 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " of the Harlot ... 462, 470 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " censured by the learn- |
| | | | | | ed ... 362 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " of the thief ... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " singer ... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " carpenter ... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " usurer ... 463, 471 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " Initiated person ... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " miser ... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " prisoner ... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | food of an accused per- |
| | | | | | son ... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " the herma- |
| | | | | | phrodite ... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " unchaste wo- |
| | | | | | man ... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " hypocrite ... 463, 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " turned sour... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | kept overnight... 463 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " leavings of the Shūdra ... 463 |
| " | " | — | to avoid food of the Physician | ... | 465, 471 |
| " | " | — | " | " | Hunter ... 465 |
| " | " | — | " | " | cruel person ... 465 |
| " | " | — | " | " | one leaving on leavings . . 465 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " the "Ugra" ... 465 |
| " | " | — | " | " | cooked for the newly-de- |
| | | | | | livered woman ... 465 |
| " | " | — | " | " | interrupted by washing ... 465 |
| " | " | — | " | " | offered by persons impure |
| | | | | | through child-birth ... 466 |
| " | " | — | " | " | " without respect ... 466 |
| " | " | — | " | " | improper meat ... 466 |
| " | " | — | " | " | food belonging to male-less |
| | | | | | female ... 466 |
| " | " | — | " | " | of an enemy ... 466 |
| " | " | — | " | " | the city-lord ... 466 |
| " | " | — | " | " | an outcast ... 466 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Accomplished Student—to remain a 'Religious student' on the | |
| Full Moon Day | 410 |
| " " — " " " on the Fourteenth | |
| of the month | 410 |
| " " —not to bathe after meals | 411 |
| " " — " " " when ill | 411 |
| " " — " " " at midnight | 411 |
| " " — " " " with his garments on | 411 |
| " " — " " " in an unknown water- | |
| reservoir | 411 |
| " " —shall not step over the shadow of | |
| the gods | 412 |
| " " —shall not step over the shadow of a | |
| superior | 412 |
| " " — " " " " " the king | 412 |
| " " — " " " " " another Accomplished Student | 412 |
| " " —shall not step over the shadow of his | |
| preceptor | 412 |
| " " — " " " " " the tawny cow | 413 |
| " " — " " " " " the Soma-creeper | 413 |
| " " —not go to go to cross-ways at midday | 413 |
| " " — " " " " " midnight | 413 |
| " " — " " " " " after take- | |
| ing meat at | |
| Shrāddha... .. | 413 |
| " " — " " " " " at the two | |
| Twilights... .. | 413 |
| " " —not to stand upon unguent powder | 414 |
| " " — " " " " " used water | 414 |
| " " — " " " " " urine | 414 |
| " " — " " " " " ordure | 414 |
| " " — " " " " " blood | 414 |
| " " — " " " " " mucus, spit- | |
| tings and | |
| vomiting | 414 |
| " " —shall pay no attention to enemy or ene- | |
| my's friend | 414 |
| " " — " " " " " unrighteous | |
| person | 414 |
| " " — " " " " " a thief | 414 |
| " " — " " " " " the lady of | |
| a n o t h e r | |
| person | 414 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|--------------|
| Accomplished Student—shall never despise the Kṣātriya, a serpent or a learned Brāhmaṇa ... | 415 |
| " " —not to despise himself ... | 416 |
| " " —always to seek fortune ... | 416 |
| " " —shall say what is true and agreeable ... | 417 |
| " " — " not utter a disagreeable truth ... | 417 |
| " " — " " " agreeable untruth ... | 417 |
| " " — " " create needless enmity ... | 418 |
| " " — " " dispute with any one ... | 418 |
| <i>Adhvaryu</i> —duties of—described in the three Vedas. ... | 1 |
| " —daughter given in marriage to—in Daiva marriage ... | 54 |
| " —used in the sense of 'adherent of the Yajurveda' ... | 157 |
| <i>Adhvarya</i> -sacrifice—to be offered at the end of seasons ... | 330 |
| <i>Āditya</i> —name given to great-grand-father ... | |
| Afternoon—essential for <i>Shrāddha</i> ... | 274 |
| <i>Āghāra</i> —name of a Libation ... | 217 |
| <i>Agnayê svāhā</i> ... | 144 |
| <i>Agnayê tvā jṣṭam nirvāpāmi</i> ... | 98 |
| <i>Āgneya</i> ... | 2 |
| <i>Agni</i> —first offering at <i>Shrāddha</i> to be made to ... | 230 |
| "—daily offering to ... | 109 |
| "—Soma-- " " ... | 109 |
| "—Sviṣṭakṛt " " ... | 109 |
| ' <i>Agnidagdha</i> '—the name of cooked rice, cake, etc. ... | 218 |
| <i>Agnihotra</i> ... | 158 |
| <i>Agnihotra</i> —taken before one's elder brother, makes the man the 'Superseder of his elder brother' ... | 191 |
| "—to be offered morning and evening ... | 327 |
| "— " " by Knowledge ... | 327 |
| "—without performing—one shall not eat of the new harvest ... | 331 |
| <i>Agniṣṭoma</i> ... | 325 |
| <i>Agniṣvāttas</i> —sons of Marichi ... | 216 |
| "—Pitrs of gods ... | 216 |
| <i>Agniṣomiya</i> ... | 94 |
| <i>Āgrēdihikṣipatīḥ</i> —explained ... | 183-184, 194 |
| <i>Āgrayaṇa</i> sacrifice ... | 330 |
| <i>Āgrayaṇēṣṭi</i> ... | 330 |
| <i>Āgrayaṇa</i> sacrifice—compulsory for one who has only the domestic fire ... | 333 |
| " "—to be performed with Vrihi, Shyāmāka and Yava ... | 333 |
| <i>Āhvaniya</i> -fire—brought into existence by Fire-laying ... | 21 |
| " "—serves the purpose of compulsory and voluntary acts ... | 21 |
| <i>Ahuta</i> —name of a great sacrifice ... | 98 |
| "— " " Japa—i.e., Vedic study ... | 99 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------|
| <i>Ajyabhāga</i> —name of Libation | 217 |
| <i>Ājyapas</i> —Pitrs of Vaishyas | 217 |
| „ —sons of Pulastya | 218 |
| <i>Akṣāralavaṇa</i> | 275 |
| Alms—to be given, after the offering to Beings | 116 |
| „ — „ to mendicant | 116 |
| „ — „ „ Brahmachārin | 216 |
| „ — „ and water-pot, to Brāhmaṇa knowing the meaning of Veda | 118 |
| „ —different from 'gift' | 304 |
| „ —not accompanied by <i>mantras</i> | 304 |
| <i>Analagmatīng Rite</i> - Sapindīkaraṇa | 259,260 |
| <i>Āmīkṣā</i> | 98 |
| 'Amṭa'—to be eaten daily | 295 |
| „ —the remnant of sacrifice | 295 |
| <i>Anagnidagdhā</i> —the name of Soma | 218 |
| <i>Āgīras</i> —father of Haviṣmat Pitrs | 218 |
| Animal sacrifices to be offered | 327 |
| <i>Antaka</i> —Bali-offering to | 110 |
| <i>Anumati</i> —daily offering to | 109 |
| Ancestors—at rites in honor of—the feeding of one learned Brāhmaṇa, beneficial | 153 |
| <i>Antyāvasāyin</i> —born of Niṣāda mother and Chāṇḍāla father | 372 |
| <i>Anvāhīrya</i> —name of monthly Shrāddha | 147 |
| „ —to be performed with commended meat | 147 |
| „ —name of the fee paid to priests at the Darṣa-Pūrṇamāsa | 147 |
| <i>Anvaṣṭakās</i> —Pitrs to be worshipped on | 425 |
| ' <i>Apasavya</i> '—in the case of offering into Fire—means towards the South | 236 |
| ' <i>Apasavya</i> '—in the case of pouring water-libations to Pitrs means the manner whereby water flows between the thumb and the index-finger | 236 |
| <i>Apastamba</i> —Rule provided by—for guests | 125 |
| „ —deprecates eating with son before Initiation | 464 |
| <i>Ap-pati</i> —Bali offering to | 110 |
| <i>Apas</i> —offering to—in water | 111 |
| <i>Āruni</i> | 164 |
| Ascetic—not to be treated as guest | 338 |
| 'Ash-like'—Brāhmaṇa—described | 120 |
| Astrology—who lives by—should be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| Astronomy—to be studied by the Accomplished Student | 320 |
| <i>Aṣṭakās</i> —enumerated | 425 |
| <i>Aṣṭakā</i> -offerings—expiation for beef-eating applies to cases other than | 285 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|---------|
| <i>Aṣṭakā Shrāddha</i> —to be performed in Marriage Fire ... | 87 |
| " " Pitrs to be worshipped on ... | 425 |
| <i>Āshvalāyana</i> —Grhyasūtra quoted ... | 71, 149 |
| <i>Asura</i> marriage—not commended for the Twice-born ... | 64 |
| " "—defined ... | 57 |
| " "—not commended for the Brāhmaṇa ... | 47 |
| " "—lawful for the Brāhmaṇa ... | 46 |
| " " " " Kṣātrīya ... | 46 |
| " " " " Vaishya ... | 46 |
| " " " " Shūdra ... | 46 |
| <i>Ārya</i> marriage— " " Brāhmaṇa ... | 46 |
| " "—defined ... | 64 |
| " "—not commended for the Twice-born ... | ... |
| " "—qualities of the son born of ... | 66 |
| <i>Āshrama</i> —the word stands for all duties prescribed for the married man ... | 13 |
| <i>Aṭy</i> —declares Twice-born person to be an outcast by marrying a Shūdra girl ... | 40 |
| <i>Atharva-Veda</i> —also a Veda ... | 10 |
| " "—deals with magical spells ... | 10 |
| " "— " no such sacrifices as the Jyotiṣṭoma, and the like ... | 10 |
| " "—cannot be grouped with Rk. or Sāma Veda ... | 11 |
| " "— " classed under 'Three Vedas' ... | 11 |
| " "—included under 'svādhāya' ... | 11 |
| " "— " " 'Vedic study' ... | 11 |
| <i>Atithi</i> —defined ... | 125 |
| <i>Ātithyēṣṭi</i> —Brāhmaṇa ... | 138 |
| <i>Atharva-Veda</i> —adherents of—excluded from being fed at Shrāddha—according to some ... | 168 |
| Atheists—undeserving of gifts at Shrāddhas and Sacrifices ... | 171 |
| Atheism—to be avoided ... | 431 |
| <i>Aukthikya</i> —name given to the <i>Uktha</i> portions of <i>Sāmaveda</i> ... | 168 |
| <i>Anpasada Fire</i> ... | 233 |
| Austerity—trickles away by vanity ... | 485 |
| ' <i>Āyāśchāganēśyanabhishasti</i> ' ... | 217 |

B.

| | |
|--|-----|
| Backbiter—goes to perdition ... | 367 |
| <i>Bālīka</i> country—frequently outrun by barbarians—not to be lived in ... | 360 |
| <i>Bali</i> —is offering to Elementals ... | 93 |
| " the means of worshipping Elementals ... | 105 |
| " used in the sense of Bhūtyajña only ... | 148 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| <i>Bali</i> —offerings—not obligatory for Brāhmaṇas living on gleanings and pickings | 312 |
| „ „ —made after Brāhmaṇas have been fed at Shrāddha | 272 |
| „ „ —to be placed in all directions | 110 |
| „ „ —to Indra | 110 |
| „ „ —to Antaka | 110 |
| „ „ —to Ap-pati | 110 |
| „ „ —Indu | 110 |
| „ „ —by the wife—without <i>mantras</i> --out of food cooked in evening | 143 |
| <i>Ball</i> —at Shrāddha—to be made out of the remnant of material offered to the gods into Fire | 237 |
| „ —to be offered in the <i>Apasavya</i> form —facing the South .. | 237 |
| „ — „ on Kusha blades | 238 |
| „ — „ at Shrāddha—to be smelt | 240 |
| „ — „ „ —small portion to be taken out of .. | 241 |
| „ — „ „ —Brāhmaṇas to be fed with | 241 |
| „ — „ —distinct to each ancestor | 261 |
| „ — offered at Shrāddha—to be given to Cow | 278 |
| „ — „ „ — „ „ „ Brāhmaṇa | 278 |
| „ — „ „ — „ „ „ Goat | 278 |
| „ — „ „ — „ „ „ Fire | 278 |
| „ — „ „ — „ „ „ thrown into Fire | 278 |
| „ — „ „ — „ „ „ given to birds | 278 |
| „ — the middlemost—to be eaten by Lawful wife, desirous of a son | 278 |
| <i>Barhiṣads</i> —the Pitṛs of Daityas, Dānavas, &c. | 217 |
| <i>Bath</i> — wife to be taken, after | 19 |
| „ — stands for a rite prescribed in Gṛhyasūtra | 19 |
| „ —to be taken on permission of Preceptor | 19 |
| „ — marks the end of observances for the Religious Student .. | 19 |
| „ — which forms part of the marriage-rite, is distinct from what marks the end of Studentship | 19 |
| <i>Baudhāyana</i> —quoted | 346 |
| <i>Beef</i> —expiation prescribed for eating—refers to eating apart from <i>Madhuparka</i> offering | 285 |
| <i>Bedding</i> —one of the things that must be offered to a guest ... | 124 |
| „ —offer of—should never fail in a good house | 124 |
| <i>Bhadrakālī</i> —offering to—at the Feet | 112 |
| ' <i>Bhaikṣa</i> '—used in the sense of <i>cooked food</i> | 303 |
| <i>Bhikṣā</i> —a mere handful | 304 |
| „ —different from <i>Pratigraha</i> | 304 |
| <i>Bhṛgu</i> | 65 |
| „ —named ' <i>Kavi</i> ' | 218 |
| „ —a <i>gotra</i> | 24 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| <i>Bhrgu</i> —decdares that Twice-born person to be an outcast who begets children on Shûdra wife alone | 40 |
| ' <i>Bhûta</i> '—different meanings of the word | 339 |
| <i>Bhûtayajñu</i> —is offerings to Elementals | 98 |
| „ —also called ' <i>Brâhmya-Huta</i> ' | 98 |
| „ --is Bali | 93 |
| Birds—offering for—to be placed on the ground | 115 |
| Boy—presenting himself for Initiation | 18 |
| 'Body of light'—means pure Consciousness | 116 |
| Blanket—especially sacred at Shrâddha | 251 |
| <i>Byâsputi</i> —works of—to be studied by the Accomplished Student | 320 |
| <i>Brâhma</i> -marriage—lawful for the <i>Brâhmaṇa</i> | 46 |
| „ „ —defined | 51 |
| „ „ —qualities of the son born of | 65 |
| ' <i>Brahmacharya</i> '—stands, sometimes only, for avoidance of intercourse with women | 16 |
| „ —retained, if one avoids his wife on the for- bidden days and on eight other days | 82 |
| ' <i>Brahmic</i> glory'—meaning of | 68 |
| <i>Brâhmayajña</i> —not to be repeated in the evening | 143 |
| „ —is Teaching | 93 |
| „ —also called ' <i>Ahuta</i> ' | 98 |
| ' <i>Brâhma-Huta</i> '—a name for a great Sacrifice | 98 |
| ' <i>Brâhmya-Huta</i> '—a name for the offerings to <i>Brâhmaṇas</i> —guests <i>Brâhma</i> -offering to—as the centre of the Household | 99 |
| <i>Brâhma</i> -offering to—as the centre of the Household | 112 |
| <i>Brâhma</i> -muhûrta—defined | 386 |
| <i>Brahmasattra</i> —is living by gleaning and picking | 309 |
| <i>Brâhmaṇahood</i> —falling from—in the case of marrying a Shûdra girl—means that his children are non- <i>Brâhmaṇas</i> | 41 |
| <i>Brâhmaṇa</i> —must marry a <i>Brâhmaṇa</i> girl | 35 |
| „ —may „ a <i>Kṣattriya</i> „ | 37 |
| „ — „ „ a <i>Vaishya</i> „ | 37 |
| „ — „ „ a <i>Shûdra</i> „ | 37 |
| „ —should not marry a Shûdra girl | 38 |
| „ —marrying <i>Shûdra</i> girl optional | 38 |
| „ —may marry „ „ only under abnormal circum- stances | 39 |
| „ —taking a Shûdra wife, goes to perdition | 41 |
| „ —having begotten a son on a Shûdra wife, falls off from <i>Brâhmaṇahood</i> | 41 |
| „ —rites offered by—if dominated by a Shûdra wife— are not accepted by gods, Pitr̥s, or guests | 42 |
| „ — <i>Brâhma</i> , <i>Daiva</i> , <i>Ar̥ṣa</i> , <i>Prâjâpatya</i> and <i>Gândharva</i> forms of marriage—lawful for | 47 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> — <i>Brāhma</i> , <i>Daiva</i> , <i>Arṣa</i> and <i>Prājāpatya</i> forms, especially | |
| commended for | 47 |
| -- <i>Brāhma</i> , the best form of marriage for | 48 |
| -- <i>Daiva</i> and <i>Prājāpatya</i> forms of marriage, are the second best for | 48 |
| -- <i>Ārṣa</i> form of marriage is third in point of com- mendation for | 48 |
| -- <i>Gāndharva</i> form of marriage is the fourth for | 48 |
| -- <i>Āsura</i> form of marriage is the fifth for | 48 |
| --Marriage without imposition of any conditions, commended for | 64 |
| --one to be fed at daily Shrāddha | 107 |
| --to offer Homa daily out of food cooked for Vishvê- dêvas | 108 |
| --by daily honouring all beings, becomes endowed with a body of Light | 115 |
| --by daily honouring all beings, goes to the Highest Place | 115 |
| --alms and water-pot to be given to | 118 |
| --'Ash-like'—Rites presented to—become lost | 119 |
| --'Ash-like'—explained | 120 |
| --offering thrown into the mouth-fire of—effulgent with learning—saves from sin | 120 |
| --staying unhonoured in one's house, takes away all merit | 122 |
| --staying even for one night, is a 'guest' | 124 |
| --living in the same village--not a guest | 125 |
| --should not advertise his family and <i>gotra</i> , for the purpose of obtaining a meal | 129 |
| --bragging about family and <i>Gotra</i> —for obtaining food—becomes a feeder on filth | 129 |
| --at the end of Household stage—should consign all belongings to his son and retire into solitude, and give himself up to Meditation | 499 |
| --summing up of the Duties of | 501 |
| --should offer the <i>Piṇḍānvâhâryaka</i> , month after month | 146 |
| --feeding of—the principal factor in Shrāddha | 148 |
| --which and how many—to be fed at Shrāddha | 148 |
| --to be avoided at Shrāddha | 148 |
| --two—to be fed at the rites in honor of the gods | 149 |
| --three—to be fed at the rites in honor of <i>Pitrs</i> | 149 |
| --only one, at each rite | 149 |
| --one—to be fed in honor of each ancestor | 149 |
| --an odd number of—to be fed at Shrāddha | 150 |
| --an even " " " " at rites in honor of gods | 150 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —a large number should not be invited to Shrāddha... | 151 |
| „ —to be invited to Shrāddha—should be thoroughly examined | 158 |
| „ —thoroughly versed in the Veda—is the channel for offerings to gods | 158 |
| „ —thoroughly versed in the Veda—is the channel for offerings to Pitrs | 158 |
| „ —real—only when his ten ancestors on the mother's side and ten on the father's side, are known to have been learned in the Veda | 154 |
| „ —divided, according to qualification | 158 |
| „ —not to be examined, at the Rite in honor of the gods | 170 |
| „ --to be examined carefully at the Rites in honor of Pitrs | 170 |
| „ —Thieves—undeserving of gifts at Shrāddhas and Sacrifices | 171 |
| „ —outcasts—undeserving of gifts at Shrāddhas and Sacrifices | 171 |
| „ —eunuchs—undeserving of gifts at Shrāddha and Sacrifices | 171 |
| „ —atheists—undeserving of gifts at Shrāddhas and Sacrifices | 171 |
| „ —with braided hair, should be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 172 |
| „ --not learned—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 172 |
| „ —a hairless „ „ „ „ | |
| „ —gambler „ „ „ „ | 172 |
| „ —Sacrificer for Hosts „ „ „ „ | 172 |
| „ —Healers „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —Temple-attendants „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —Meat-sellers „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —living by trade „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —servant of village „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —King „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —with deformed nails „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —with black teeth „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —opposing his superior „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —who forsakes the Fires „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —who lives by usury „ „ „ „ | 174 |
| „ —who is invalid „ „ „ „ | 175 |
| „ —who is cattle-tender „ „ „ „ | 175 |
| „ —who supersedes Elder brother „ „ „ „ | 175 |
| „ —who neglects the Great Sacrifices „ „ „ „ | 175 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Bráhmana</i> —who is inimical to <i>Bráhmanas</i> to be avoided at <i>Shrád-</i> <i>dha</i> and <i>Sacrifice</i> | 175 |
| „ —who has been superseded | |
| by Younger Brother „ „ „ „ | 175 |
| „ —who is member of a corporation „ „ „ „ | 175 |
| „ —who is an actor „ „ „ „ | 177 |
| „ —who has broken the vows | |
| of continence „ „ „ „ | 177 |
| „ — „ has a <i>Shûdra</i> wife „ „ „ „ | 177 |
| „ — „ is the son of a remarried woman „ „ „ „ | 177 |
| „ — „ one-eyed— „ „ „ „ | 177 |
| „ — „ permits a paramour in his house „ „ „ „ | 177 |
| „ — „ teaches for a stipulated fee „ „ „ „ | 178 |
| „ — „ is taught by a paid teacher „ „ „ „ | 178 |
| „ — „ teaches a <i>Shûdra</i> „ „ „ „ | 178 |
| „ — „ is taught by a „ „ „ „ | 178 |
| „ —whose speech is reprehensible „ „ „ „ | 178 |
| „ —who is the son of an adulteress „ „ „ „ | 178 |
| „ — „ „ „ a widow — „ „ „ „ | 178 |
| „ — „ forsakes his mother „ „ „ „ | 179 |
| „ — „ „ „ father „ „ „ „ | 179 |
| „ — „ „ „ superior „ „ „ „ | 179 |
| „ — „ has formed connection with outcasts „ „ „ „ | 179 |
| „ —is house-burner „ „ „ „ | 181 |
| „ — „ prisoner „ „ „ „ | 181 |
| „ —eats the food of an adulteress' son „ „ „ „ | 181 |
| „ —who sells <i>Soma</i> „ „ „ „ | 181 |
| „ — „ sacrificial merit „ „ „ „ | 181 |
| „ — „ voyages by sea „ „ „ „ | 181 |
| „ — „ is a bard „ „ „ „ | 181 |
| „ — „ deals in oils „ „ „ „ | 181 |
| „ — „ perjures „ „ „ „ | 181 |
| „ — „ quarrels with his father „ „ „ „ | 182 |
| „ — „ keeps a gambling house „ „ „ „ | 182 |
| „ — „ is a drunkard „ „ „ „ | 182 |
| „ — „ „ afflicted with foul disease „ „ „ „ | 182 |
| „ — „ „ accused of sins— „ „ „ „ | 182 |
| „ — „ „ a hypocrite „ „ „ „ | 182 |
| „ — „ „ deals in essences „ „ „ „ | 182 |
| „ — „ „ makes bows and arrows „ „ „ „ | 183 |
| „ —whose wife dallies with others „ „ „ „ | 183 |
| „ —who makes love to his brother's widow „ „ „ „ | 183 |
| „ — „ „ injures a friend „ „ „ „ | 183 |
| „ — „ „ subsists by gambling „ „ „ „ | 183 |
| „ — „ „ is taught by his son „ „ „ „ | 183 |
| „ — „ „ is epileptic „ „ „ „ | 185 |
| „ — „ „ has scrofulous swellings „ „ „ „ | 185 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —suffering from Leucoderma—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —backbiter—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —lunatic— „ „ „ „ „ | 185 |
| „ —blind— „ „ „ „ „ | 185 |
| „ —derider of the Veda—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —tamer of Elephants—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —tamer of Horses—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —tamer of Bulls—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —tamer of Camels—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —subsisting on stars—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —subsisting on Astrology—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice „ .. | 185 |
| „ —who keeps birds—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —teacher of warfare—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 185 |
| „ —who diverts water-courses—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 186 |
| „ —who obstructs water-course—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice . .. | 186 |
| „ —House-planner—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 186 |
| „ —Messenger—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 186 |
| „ —Tree-planter— „ „ „ „ „ | 186 |
| „ —sporting with dogs—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 186 |
| „ —Falconer—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 186 |
| „ —defiler of virgins—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 186 |
| „ —who is cruel—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 186 |
| „ —who lives on Shūdras—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 186 |
| „ —who sacrifices for Gaṇas—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice... .. | 186 |
| „ —devoid of right conduct—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 187 |
| „ —without vigour—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 187 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —who is constant beggar—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 187 |
| „ —living by agriculture—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 187 |
| „ —suffering from elephantiasis—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 187 |
| „ —who is spoken ill of by good men—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 187 |
| „ —who deals in sheep—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 188 |
| „ —who keeps buffaloes—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 188 |
| „ —who marries a woman who has had another husband —to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 188 |
| „ —who carries dead bodies—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 188 |
| „ —the learned—should avoid, at Shrāddhas and Sacrifices, all such Twice-born men who are of reprehensible conduct | 188 |
| „ —who is not learned, becomes quenched like the fire of dry grass | 189 |
| „ —Sacrificial offering—not to be presented to | 189 |
| „ —unworthy of the line—results of making gifts to | 190 |
| „ —devoid of self-restraint—food eaten by—is consumed by demons | 190 |
| „ —demons consume food eaten by—if unworthy of company | 190 |
| „ —Blind man should not look at—during dinner | 197 |
| „ —one-eyed man should not look at—during dinner... .. | 197 |
| „ —Lepor „ „ „ — „ „ „ .. | 197 |
| „ —one afflicted with a foul disease—should not look at—during dinner | 197 |
| „ —officiating at Shūdra's sacrifice should not touch— .. | 198 |
| „ —should not accept gift from one who officiates at Shūdra's sacrifices— | 198 |
| „ —gift to—one born of a remarried woman is like libation poured on ashes | 199 |
| „ —food given to one—'unworthy of company'—is wasted— | 200 |
| „ —knowing Veda and its meaning is 'sanctifier of Company'— | 204 |
| „ —Expounder of Veda and its meaning is 'Sanctifier of Company'— | 204 |
| „ —Student, is 'Sanctifier of Company'— | 204 |
| „ —who gives a thousand, is sanctifier of Company | 204 |
| „ —centenarian, is „ „ „ .. | 204 |
| „ —three, to be invited on Shrāddha day, or on pre- | |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —when invited for Shrāddha, shall remain self-controlled | 207 |
| „ —when invited for Shrāddha, shall not recite the Veda | 207 |
| „ —Pitrs follow the invited— | 207 |
| „ — „ attend upon— | 207 |
| „ —invited to Shrāddha, by neglecting it, incurs sin ... | 208 |
| „ —invited to Sacrifice, by neglecting it, incurs sin ... | 208 |
| „ —invited to Shrāddha, if dallies with women, imbibes all the sin of the performer | 209 |
| „ — <i>Somapa</i> Pitrs worshipped by— | 211 |
| „ —when offering libations, should pronounce Gotra-name | 215 |
| „ — <i>Somapa</i> —the Pitrs of— | 217 |
| „ —Pitrs of: <i>Anagnidaghas</i> , <i>Agnidaghas</i> , <i>Kāvyas Barhiṣads</i> <i>Agniṣvāttas</i> , and <i>Saumyas</i> | 218 |
| „ —in honor of gods, to be engaged first | 223 |
| „ —engaged in honor of gods, guards the offerings to Pitrs ... | 223 |
| „ —seats for—at Shrāddha— of kusha grass | 228 |
| „ —at Shrāddha to sit on Kusha-seat—after ablutions ... | 228 |
| „ —at Shrāddha—to be worshipped with perfumes and garlands | 228 |
| „ —water to be presented to—at Shrāddha | 229 |
| „ —sesamum, with kusha-blade, to be presented to—at Shrāddha | 229 |
| „ —permitted by—one should make an offering into Fire ... | 229 |
| „ —offering at Shrāddha, to be made into the hand of—in the absence of Fire | 231 |
| „ —described as the ‘God of Shrāddha’ | 235 |
| „ — „ „ free from anger | 235 |
| „ — „ „ easily satisfied | 235 |
| „ — „ „ intent upon sustaining the Universe ... | 235 |
| „ —to be fed with Balls offered at Shrāddha | 241 |
| „ —water and sesamum to be poured into the hands of—at Shrāddha | 245 |
| „ —top-portions of the Balls to be offered to—at Shrāddha | 245 |
| „ —food to be placed before—at Shrāddha | 245 |
| „ — „ „ served to—with both hands | 245 |
| „ —whatever is agreeable to—should be given ungrudgingly | 249 |
| „ —to be kept happy at Shrāddha | 250 |
| „ — „ feed gently „ | 250 |
| „ — „ urged to eat more at Shrāddha | 250 |
| „ —should eat at shrāddha, with speech in control ... | 251 |
| „ — „ not „ describe the qualities of the food | 251 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —invited at Shrāddha—should not eat with head covered | 253 |
| „ —invited at Shrāddha—should not eat with face towards the South | 253 |
| „ —invited to Shrāddha, should not eat with shoes on ... | 231 |
| „ —Chāṇḍāla should not look at—while eating ... | 254 |
| „ —Dog „ „ „ — „ „ „ | 254 |
| „ —Pig „ „ „ — „ „ „ | 254 |
| „ —Cock „ „ „ — „ „ „ | 254 |
| „ —unclean woman „ „ — „ „ „ | 254 |
| „ —Eunuch „ „ — „ „ „ | 254 |
| „ —stray—seeking for food—to be fed at Shrāddha ... | 256 |
| „ —food to be scattered before—after they have eaten Shrāddha | 257 |
| „ —to be fed at Shrāddha, in honor of one just dead—without any in honor of gods ... | 258 |
| „ —fed at Shrāddha—should any ' May there be Svadhā ' ... | 272 |
| „ —superior—essential at Shrāddha | 274 |
| „ —during first quarter of life, shall dwell with his Teacher, for Vedic study | 299 |
| „ —during the second quarter, shall take a wife, and live in the house | 299 |
| „ —means of subsistence for— | 300 |
| „ —should adopt such means of livelihood as involves the least trouble to living beings | 300 |
| „ —for bare subsistence, should have recourse only to his irreproachable occupations | 301 |
| „ —to live by ' Truth ' | 302 |
| „ — „ „ ' Nectar ' | 302 |
| „ — „ „ ' Death ' | 302 |
| „ — „ „ ' Super-death ' | 302 |
| „ — „ „ ' Truth and Falsehood ' | 302 |
| „ —never to live by the ' living of the Dog ' ... | 302 |
| „ —to live on what is obtained by Gleaning and Picking ... | 303 |
| „ — „ „ „ unasked | 302 |
| „ — „ „ „ alms obtained by begging | 302 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ cultivation | 302 |
| „ —For—begging involves humiliation | 305 |
| „ —to live by Trade | 305 |
| „ —For—living by service, is the ' living of dogs ' ... | 305 |
| „ —may possess a granary full of grain | 306 |
| „ —may possess a jar full of grain | 306 |
| „ — „ „ „ what is required for three days ... | 306 |
| „ — „ „ be one who does not possess enough for the morrow | 306 |
| „ —not having enough for the morrow, is superior to one having enough for three days | 307 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Brâhmaṇa</i> —having enough for three days, is superior to one possessing a jarful | 307 |
| „ —possessing a jarful, is superior to one possessing a granary | 308 |
| „ —having a large family to support, should possess a granary | 308 |
| „ —having lesser responsibilities, should possess less and less | 307 |
| „ —living by 'Brahmasattra,' | 308 |
| „ — „ „ 'gleaning and picking' is said to live by 'Brahmasattra' | 308 |
| „ —six occupations for : (1) Gleaning (2) Picking, (3) Begging, (4) Earning without begging, (5) Trade and Agriculture, (6) Teaching and Officiating at Sacrifices | 308 |
| „ —six occupations differently enumerated—(1) Learning, (2) Teaching, (3) Sacrificing, (4) Officiating at Sacrifices, (5) Giving gifts and (6) Receiving gifts | 308 |
| „ —some—follow all six occupations | 308 |
| „ —some—possessing a jarful of grains—adopt three occupations | 309 |
| „ —Agriculture and Trade deprecated for | 309 |
| „ —living by Gleaning and Picking, called 'Yâyâvara' | 311 |
| „ —living by Gleanings and Pickings, should be intent on Agnihotra | 311 |
| „ —living by Gleanings and Pickings, should offer Iṣṭi-sacrifices on Moonless days | 311 |
| „ —living by Gleanings and Pickings, should offer Iṣṭi-sacrifices on Full-moon days | 311 |
| „ —living by Gleanings and Pickings, should offer Iṣṭi-sacrifices on the Solstices | 311 |
| „ —Vaishvadeva-offerings, not obligatory for | 312 |
| „ —Ball offerings „ „ „ | 312 |
| „ —wife of—to maintain herself by the same means | 312 |
| „ —never to follow the worldly way of subsistence | 313 |
| „ —to adopt perfect contentment | 314 |
| „ —to remain self-controlled | 314 |
| „ —offering the Five Sacrifices by means of knowledge | 325 |
| „ —to offer Harvest-Sacrifice | 330 |
| „ — „ Adhvara-sacrifice | 330 |
| „ — „ Animal-sacrifice | 330 |
| „ — „ Soma-sacrifice | 330 |
| „ —by striking the—even with a straw—one is born in sinful wombs | 432 |
| „ —with Fire, not to eat new grain, without performing New-Harvest Sacrifice | 332 |

| | | |
|---|-----|---------|
| <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —with Fire, not to eat new grain, without performing | | |
| Animal Sacrifice | ... | 332 |
| " —by threatening a—one goes to hell | ... | 432 |
| " —one who spills the blood of—undergoes suffering | ... | 433 |
| " —Duties of—See under 'Accomplished Student' | | |
| " —not to study Veda on certain days and occasions— see under "Vedic Study" | | |
| " —cat-like—not to be given any presents | ... | 448 |
| " —wicked— " " " " | ... | 448 |
| " —heron-like— " " " " | ... | 448 |
| " —ignorant of the Veda—, " " " | ... | 448 |
| " —cat-like—goes to hell | ... | 453 |
| " —heron-like— " " " | ... | 453 |
| " —while unclean—should not touch the cow | ... | 420 |
| " — " " — " " " " Fire | ... | 420 |
| " — " " — " " " " a Brāhmaṇa... | ... | 420 |
| " — " " — not to look at the Sun, Moon or stars | ... | 420 |
| " — " " — on touching the above—shall wipe with water his organs and limbs | ... | 420 |
| " —shall not needlessly touch his cavities | ... | 421 |
| " — " " touch secret hairs | ... | 421 |
| " —shall be intent on Auspicious Customs | ... | 421 |
| " — " daily recite prayers | ... | 421 |
| " — " " offer oblations into Fire | ... | 421 |
| " —to form relationships with superior people | ... | 489 |
| " —to avoid " " inferior " | ... | 489 |
| " —should act resolutely | ... | 490 |
| " —to be gentle | ... | 490 |
| " — " tolerant | ... | 490 |
| " —to avoid associating with cruel men | ... | 490 |
| " — " injuring others | ... | 490 |
| " —to have self-control | ... | 490 |
| " — " practise Liberality | ... | 490 |
| " —may accept—from all persons—gifts of fuel, water, roots and fruits, and food, Honey and Fear- lessness | ... | 491 |
| " —may accept alms offered, without begging, even from sinful persons | ... | 492-493 |
| " —shall not refuse gift of a Conch | ... | 493 |
| " — " " " " " House | ... | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Kusha | ... | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Perfumes | ... | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Water | ... | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Flowers | ... | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Jewels | ... | 493 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —shall not refuse gift of a Curd | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Grain | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Fish | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Milk | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Meat | 493 |
| " — " " " " " Vegetables | 493 |
| " —may accept gifts from all persons, for specific purposes | 494 |
| " — " " " " good persons only—when free | 494 |
| " —how to offer himself | 495 |
| " —shall never misrepresent himself | 497 |
| Breathing—offering of Life-breath into Speech—accomplishes the Five Sacrifices | 324 |
| Bride—presents to—by Bridegroom, not prohibited | 85 |
| " —to be honoured with presents by Bridegroom and all her relations | 85 |
| Brother—younger—'superseder of elder brother,' by marrying before him, or taking the Fires before him | 191 |
| " —younger—must wait for his elder Brother's marriage | 192 |
| " —superseding his elder brother, goes to hell | 193 |
| " —superseded by younger brother, " " | 193 |
| " —wife of superseding younger brother, goes to hell | 193 |
| " —giver of girl to superseding younger brother, goes to hell | 193 |
| " —elder—should behave in a manner not to put obstacles in the way of younger brother | 193 |
| " —younger—should wait for his Brother's marriage—for 6, 8, or 12 years | 193 |
| " —making love to the wife of dead—is to be known as 'Didhiṣṭpati' | 194 |
| " —following 'Niyoga,' is called 'Didhiṣṭpati' | 194 |
| " —elder—equal to the Father | 444 |
| Brothel—equal, in uncleanness, to ten grog-shops | 384 |
| Butter —to be served on the ground | 246 |

C

| | |
|--|----------|
| Caste—marriage with a girl of higher—not permitted | 38 |
| Cat-like persons—not to be received as guest | 335 |
| " —may be given food | 336 |
| " <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> —not to be given gifts | 447 |
| " behaviour—defined | 450, 452 |
| Cattle-tender—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 175 |
| <i>Chāturmāsya-sacrifice</i> | 331 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------|
| Charity—to be practised, whenever a suitable recipient turns up | 479 |
| Ohhândogya Upanişad—referred to | 828 |
| " " —describes the science of Five Fires ... | 203 |
| Ohândrđyana | 158 |
| Ohâturmásyu—sacrifices | 98 |
| Ohânḡala—offering for—to be placed on the ground ... | 115 |
| Child-teaching of—is the Father's duty | 14 |
| " —male born, when man's seed is in excess | 81 |
| " —female " " woman's " " " " " " " " | 81 |
| " —twin—when both equal | 81 |
| " —'non-male' , , " " " " " " " " | 81 |
| Children—lords of Âkasha | 444 |
| Class-follows—on visit—should be fed with wife | 182 |
| Cleaning—essential for Shraddha | 274 |
| Commended food | 295 |
| Company—large—hamper proper treatment and purity and quality of Bráhmapas | 151 |
| Companion—in the other world—none, save Spiritual Merit ... | 486 |
| Convivial Dinner—called the ' Gift of Devils ' | 164 |
| Conduct—Right—brings Longevity | 427-428 |
| " — " — " right children | 427 |
| " — " — " inexhaustible wealth | 427 |
| " — " —destroys everything inauspicious | 427 |
| " — " —to be attended to | 427 |
| " — " —the root of Righteousness | 427 |
| Contentment—to be adopted by the Bráhmapas | 312 |
| " — the root of happiness | 314 |
| ' Cow '—stands for the Madhuparka offering | 18 |
| " —Detailed procedure regarding the giving of | 481 |
| " —giving of— brings all rewards | 482 |
| Creature—is born alone | 487 |
| " —dies alone | 487 |
| " —enjoys good and bad deeds alone | 487 |
| Curd—to be served on the ground | 240 |

D

| | | | | | |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Daily duties—of Brāhmaṇas | ... | ... | ... | ... | 386 |
| Dāiva marriage—lawful for Brāhmaṇas | ... | ... | ... | ... | 46 |
| " " —defined | ... | ... | ... | ... | 54 |
| " " —in- daughter given to Priest officiating at a sacrifice | ... | ... | ... | ... | 54 |
| " " —Qualities of son born of | ... | ... | ... | ... | 60 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Duties—of Marital Life | 71 |
| Duty—means of knowing one's—available for the Ignorant—is the Path trodden by his Forefathers | 442 |
| <i>Dyauh—Prthivi</i> —daily offering to | 109 |

E

| | |
|--|-----|
| <i>Ekoddishṭa</i> (Unitary Rite)—offered to one person | 259 |
| „ —First—performed on the Eleventh Day | 263 |
| Elder Brother—supersession of | 191 |
| „ „ —extenuating conditions | 192 |
| „ „ —period during which one should wait for the marriage of | 192 |
| Elementals—have expectations from family-men | 106 |
| „ —to be worshipped with Bali | 106 |
| Elephant—'shadow' of the—falling Eastwards—means 'after- noon' | 287 |
| „ — „ „ —means eclipse | 287 |
| „ — „ „ —distinct from eclipse | 287 |
| Enemy—should never be entertained at Shrāddha | 166 |
| Etymologies—to be studied by the Accomplished Student | 320 |
| Eugenic rules | 29 |
| „ „ —not scriptural | 29 |
| Eunuchs—undeserving of gifts at Shrāddhas and Sacrifices | 171 |
| „ —Brāhmaṇa not to eat at Sacrifice performed by | 459 |
| Exegesis—to be studied by the Accomplished Student | 92 |
| Expiating—Five great Sacrifices meant for | 92 |
| Expiation—for beef-eating—refers to eating, apart from <i>Madhuparka</i> and <i>Aṣṭakā</i> offerings | 285 |

F

| | |
|--|-----|
| Fame—secured by honouring of guests | 127 |
| Family—bragging about—for obtaining food—deprecated \ | 129 |
| „ —not to be advertised, for obtaining food | 129 |
| Father—named 'Vasu' | 294 |
| „ —if living—should be his child's Preceptor | 17 |
| „ —is the Lord of the world of Prajāpati | 444 |
| „ —may appoint another man as Preceptor | 17 |
| „ —to provide the child's gift to his Preceptor | 17 |
| „ —of girl—not to accept any gifts from Bridegroom | 88 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Father—of girl—may accept a Cow and Bull, at Ârṣa marriage | |
| —according to some | 84 |
| " " —shall not accept anything—even in Ârṣa marriage | 85 |
| " —living—Shrâddha to be offered to previous ancestors... | 241 |
| " —may be fed at Shrâddha, as a Brâhmâṇa | 241 |
| Father-in-law—to be received with 'Honey-Mixture' | 188 |
| " —may be fed at Shrâddha | 170 |
| Fee—to the Teacher—some 'superior thing' | 17 |
| Feeding—method of | 227 |
| " —Place for | 227 |
| " — " " —should be clean | 227 |
| " — " " — " " secluded | 227 |
| " — " " —sloping southwards | 227 |
| " — " " —smeared with cow-dung | 227 |
| " — Procedure to be adopted after | 270 |
| " — of Relations—at Shrâddha | 280 |
| " — of Paternal relations " | 280 |
| Feet-washing—to be done at a distance from dwelling-place | 426 |
| Female relatives—have sovereignty over the world of Heavenly Nymphs | 444 |
| Filthy disease—offering for persons afflicted with—to be placed on the ground | 115 |
| Five Fires—are the Gṛhya (Domestic) Fire, the Sâbhya (Social) Fire and the Trêtâ, (the three Sacrificial Fires) | 122 |
| Fire-laying—serves the purposes of compulsory and voluntary acts | 21 |
| " —brings into existence the Âhâvânîya Fire, for the purpose of compulsory and voluntary acts | 21 |
| " —not an end in itself | 95 |
| " —the only means for securing the proper Fire for offerings | 95 |
| " —Sâbhya—described | 122 |
| Fire—the means of cleaning water, hand and wood | 346 |
| " —not to be blown with the mouth | 356 |
| " —no unclean thing to be thrown into | 356 |
| " —feet not to be warmed at | 356 |
| " —not to be placed under oneself | 356 |
| " — " " stepped over | 356 |
| " — " " placed under the feet | 356 |
| Fires—if not worshipped with new grains and meat, devour the man | 384 |
| " —Five—science of the—explained in the Upaniṣads | 128 |
| " — " —worshipping of—leads to results superior to those of Shrâddha rites | 128 |
| " —Forsaker of—to be avoided at Shrâddhas and Sacrifices | 174 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|----------------|
| Fires—Five—science of—described in Chhândogya Upaniṣad... | 203 |
| Fire—in the absence of—offerings to be made into the hands of Brāhmaṇas | 231 |
| „ —two points of time, for the setting up of Smārta-- ... | 233 |
| „ —to be set up—(a) on marriage } —(b) on succession } | 233 |
| Five Sacrifices—the Householder to eat after | 185 |
| „ „ —to be repeated in the Evening—except Brah- ma-yajña and Pitṛyajña | 143 |
| „ „ —described in detail | 322 |
| „ „ —(1) to the Sages, (2) to the Gods, (3) to the Elementals, (4) to Men and (5) Pitṛs | 322 |
| „ „ —obligatory | 322 |
| „ „ —offered 'into the sense organs' by men free from desires | 322 |
| „ „ —offered 'into the sense organs' by Brāhmaṇas living in Pickings and Gleanings | 323 |
| „ „ —'offered into sense organs' means the restrain- ing of the organs | 323 |
| „ „ —'offered into sense organs' stands for the first morsel of food eaten with the mantra, 'Prāṇāya svāhā' | 324 |
| „ „ —accomplished by the act of Breathing, which is the sacrifice of Life-breath into speech | 324 |
| „ „ —accomplished by the act of Breathing—only for one who is cognisant of the real na- ture of the Soul | 324 |
| „ „ —offered by means of knowledge | 325 |
| „ „ — „ „ „ —only by one who knows the real nature of the Soul | 325 |
| Flag of virtue—who displays,—is 'cat-like' | 450,452 |
| Forefathers—path followed by—to be trodden | 441 |
| „ — „ —regarding alliances—to be trodden | 442 |
| „ — „ —followed by—to determine the right course of conduct, in cases of doubt | 442 |
| Food—only—to be given to Hypocrite, arriving as guest | 336 |
| „ „ „ „ cat-like person „ „ | 336 |
| „ „ „ „ Heron-like „ „ „ „ | 336 |
| „ „ „ „ Logician „ „ „ „ | 336 |
| „ —leavings of—to be thrown at a distance | 426 |
| „ —offered by player on musical instruments to be avoided, dealer in weapons „ „ | 468 468,471 |
| „ — „ dog-keepers „ „ | 468 |
| „ — „ wine-sellers „ „ | 468 |
| „ — „ clothes-washer „ „ | 468,470 |
| „ — „ dyer „ „ | 468 |
| „ — „ bard „ „ | 468 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|----------|
| Food—offered by person having a paramour in his house, to be avoided | 468 |
| " — " " bearing the presence of paramour, " " ... | 469 |
| " — " " in a house where death has occurred, " " ... | 469 |
| " — " " that is disagreeable to be avoided ... | 469 |
| " — " " by king, to be avoided ... | 469 |
| " — " " Shûdra " " ... | 470 |
| " — " " goldsmith " " ... | 470 |
| " — " " leather cutter " " ... | 470 |
| " — " " artisans " " ... | 470 |
| " — " " physician " " ... | 465, 471 |
| " — " " hunter " " ... | 465 |
| " — " " cruel person " " ... | 465 |
| " — " " one living on leavings, to be avoided ... | 465 |
| " —to be avoided—belonging to <i>Ugra</i> ... | 465 |
| " — " —cooked for the newly-delivered woman ... | 465 |
| " — " —interrupted by washing ... | 465 |
| " — " —offered by persons impure by child-birth... | 466 |
| " — " — " without respect .. | 466 |
| " — " —improper meat ... | 466 |
| " — " —belonging to a male-less female ... | 466 |
| " — " —offered by enemy .. | 466 |
| " — " — " " city-lord ... | 466 |
| " — " — " " outcast ... | 466 |
| " — " —which has been sneezed at ... | 466 |
| " — " —offered by Informer ... | 467 |
| " — " " " —Perjuror ... | 467 |
| " — " " " —Seller of sacrifices... | 467 |
| " — " " " —Actor ... | 467 |
| " — " " " —Toiler ... | 467 |
| " — " " " —Ungrateful person... | 467 |
| " — " " " —Blacksmith ... | 468 |
| " — " " " — <i>Niṣāda</i> ... | 468 |
| " — " " " —Stage-player ... | 468 |
| " — " —which has been intentionally touched with feet ... | 460 |
| " — " —belonging to Brâhmana-slayer ... | 461 |
| " — " — " " woman in her courses ... | 461 |
| " — " —which has been picked by birds ... | 461 |
| " — " — " " touched by dog ... | 461 |
| " — " — " " smelt by the cow ... | 462 |
| " — " — " " publicly offered ... | 462 |
| " — " —belonging to a multitude ... | 462, 470 |
| " — " — " " Harlot ... | 462, 470 |
| " — " —what is censured by the learned ... | 462 |
| " — " —belonging to Thief ... | 463 |
| " — " — " " Singer ... | 463 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|----------|
| Food—to be avoided—belonging to Carpenter | 463 |
| “ “ “ “ Userer | 463 |
| “ “ “ “ Initiated person | 463 |
| “ “ “ “ Miser | 463 |
| “ “ “ “ Prisoner | 463 |
| “ “ “ “ Accused person | 463 |
| “ “ “ “ Hermaphrodite | 463 |
| “ “ “ “ Unchaste woman | 463, 471 |
| “ “ “ “ Hypocrite | 463 |
| “ “ “ —that turned sour | 463 |
| “ “ “ —that kept overnight | 463 |
| “ “ “ —what forms the leavings of the Shûdra | 463 |
| “ “ “ —offered by intoxicated person | 460 |
| “ “ “ “ “ angry “ | 460 |
| “ “ “ —that contaminated by hair | 460 |
| “ “ “ “ “ insects | 460 |
| “ —non-eatability of—of four kinds | 472 |
| “ —of miserly Vedic Scholar, is equal to that of the Liberal Userer | 474 |
| “ —of the Liberal Userer is superior to that of the Miserly Vedic Scholar | 470 |
| Food—By eating—belonging to prohibited persons—one should fast | 471 |
| “ —commended | 295 |
| “ —proceeds from rain | 100 |
| “ —creatures proceed from... | 100 |
| “ —cooked to the best of one's ability—to be offered to guests | 121 |
| “ —to be served with both hands | 246 |
| “ —accessories—soup, etc., to be placed on the ground | 246 |
| “ —soft and hard—to be placed on the ground | 247 |
| “ —to be served—accompanied by a description of its qualities | 247 |
| “ — “ served—hot | 251 |
| “ — “ “ —little by little | 251 |
| “ —sacrificial —defined | 275 |
| Forenoon—essential for sacrifices | 274 |
| Friendship—by trying to establish—by means of Shrâddha—one falls | 163 |
| Friend nor foe—who is neither—should be fed at Shrâddha | 161 |
| Friends—not to be treated as guests | 130 |
| “ —coming to visit, should be fed with wife | 182 |
| “ —not to be fed at Shrâddha | 161 |
| “ —to be secured, by means of gifts | 161 |
| “ —forming principal factor at Shrâddha, make it futile | 162 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ Sacrifices, “ “ | 162 |
| “ —may be entertained at Shrâddha | 166 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Girl—diseased —to be avoided ... | 30 |
| „ —with reddish eyes— „ „ ... | 30 |
| „ —bearing the name of an asterism—to be avoided ... | 30 |
| „ — „ „ a tree — „ „ ... | 30 |
| „ — „ „ „ river — „ „ ... | 30 |
| „ — „ „ „ low caste— „ „ ... | 30 |
| „ — „ „ „ mountain— „ „ ... | 30 |
| „ — „ „ „ bird — „ „ ... | 30 |
| „ — „ „ „ serpent — „ „ ... | 30 |
| „ — „ „ „ slave — „ „ ... | 30 |
| „ — „ „ one inspiring terror— „ „ ... | 30 |
| „ —with faultless body, commended ... | 31 |
| „ —bearing an agreeable name, commended ... | 31 |
| „ —elephant-gaited, „ „ ... | 31 |
| „ —swan-gaited, „ „ ... | 31 |
| „ —fine-haired, „ „ ... | 31 |
| „ —with fine teeth, „ „ ... | 31 |
| „ — „ tender limbs, „ „ ... | 31 |
| „ —unmarried—only to be married ... | 32 |
| „ —younger than oneself—to be married ... | 32-33 |
| „ —with brothers— „ „ ... | 33 |
| „ —without brothers—not commended ... | 33 |
| „ —whose parentage is not known, not to be married ... | 33 |
| „ —Full rites of 'taking the hand' prescribed for marriages, when Bride and Bridegroom belong to same caste... | 70 |
| „ —of lower caste—marrying boys of higher caste ... | 70 |
| „ —Kṣattriya—marrying Brāhmana,—to take hold of an arrow ... | 70 |
| „ —Vaiśya — „ „ „ „ the goad ... | 70 |
| „ —Shūdra — „ „ „ „ the gar- ment-hem ... | 70 |
| „ —Father of—should accept nothing from bridegroom ... | 83 |
| „ — „ „ —by receiving anything, becomes 'child-seller' ... | 83 |
| „ —newly married—should be fed immediately after guests ... | 133 |
| Gleaning—explained... .. | 300 |
| „ and Picking—called 'Brahmasattra' ... | 309 |
| „ „ „ — „ 'Yāyāvara' ... | 311 |
| Giver of silver—obtains beauty ... | 480 |
| „ „ water— „ satisfaction ... | 480 |
| „ „ food — „ imperishable happiness ... | 480 |
| „ „ sesamum „ desirable offspring ... | 480 |
| „ „ lamp — „ excellent eye-sight ... | 480 |
| „ „ land — „ laud ... | 480 |
| „ „ gold — „ long life ... | 480 |
| „ „ house— „ excellent mansions ... | 480 |
| Gods—constant honouring of ... | 99 |
| „ —have expectations from family-men ... | 105 |
| „ —to be worshipped with Homa ... | 105 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Gods—Rites in honour of—become lost—when presented to ignorant Brāhmaṇa | 119 |
| „ —even number of Brāhmaṇas to be fed in honour of | 150 |
| „ —food offered at rites in honor of—to be given to a learned Brāhmaṇa | 152 |
| „ —at rites in honor of—the feeding of one learned Brāhmaṇa beneficial | 153 |
| „ —at rites in honor of—the feeding of several ignorant Brāhmaṇas useless... .. | 153 |
| „ —offerings for—to be given to the learned | 156 |
| „ —Brāhmaṇas not to be examined at the Rites in honor of | 170 |
| „ —born from Sages | 220 |
| „ —Brāhmaṇa in honor of—to be engaged first | 223 |
| „ — „ — „ —guards the offerings to Pitṛs | 223 |
| „ —a rite in honor of—at beginning and end of Shrāddha | 224 |
| „ —offerings to—defiled by the look of Chāṇḍala | 254 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ — „ Pig | 254 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ — „ Cock | 254 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ — „ Dog | 254 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ — „ Unclean woman | 254 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ — „ Eunuch | 254 |
| Golaka son—defined | 195 |
| Gotra—what is | 214 |
| „ —is the first progenitor of the family imparting his name to it | 214 |
| „ —is the most renowned person in the family | 214 |
| „ —Subdivisions of | 214 |
| „ —the forefather whom his descendants remember with pride | 214 |
| „ —use of the name—without beginning | 215 |
| „ —Parāshara as—spoken of in the Veda | 215 |
| „ —name to be pronounced by Brāhmaṇa offering libation | 215 |
| „ —Parāshara and Garga | 215 |
| „ —no usage among Kṣātriyas, regarding | 215 |
| „ —is indicative of descent from such Rṣis as Vāsiṣṭha, Bhṛgu, Garga, etc. | 24 |
| „ —marriage between parties of the same gotra permissible, if Pravarā different, according to Gautama | 24 |
| „ —a subdivision of caste | 24 |
| „ —remembered by each man | 25 |
| „ —Parāshara | 25 |
| „ —Upamanya | 25 |
| „ —persons belonging to same—belong to a common stock and caste | 25 |
| „ —diversity of—only among Brāhmaṇas | 25 |
| „ — „ —not among Kṣātriyas | 25 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ — „ Vaishyas | 25 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------|
| <i>Gotra</i> —of Kṣattriya—determined by that of his Priest ... | 25 |
| „ —means <i>name</i> also ... | 180 |
| „ —same— means ' <i>sapiṇḍa</i> ' ... | 26 |
| „ — means <i>family</i> , according to some ... | 26 |
| „ —Bragging about—for obtaining food— one becomes a ' Feeder on filth ' ... | 129 |
| Grammar—to be studied by Accomplished Student ... | 320 |
| Grandfather—named ' Rudra ' ... | 294 |
| „ —maternal—to be fed at Shrāddha ... | 170 |
| „ —to be fed at Shrāddha ... | 244 |
| Great-grandfather—named ' Āditya ' ... | 294 |
| Great-great-grandfather—no offerings to—after <i>Sapiṇḍi Karṇa</i> of Father ... | 261 |
| <i>Gṛhya</i> rites—are those prescribed in the <i>Gṛhyasūtras</i> ... | 89 |
| „ —to be performed in the marriage-fire ... | 87 |
| „ —defined ... | 87 |
| „ —exact scope and meaning of—described ... | 88-89 |
| <i>Gṛhyasūtra</i> —of Āshvalāyana—quoted ... | 71 |
| „ —Bathing rite prescribed in ... | 19 |
| „ —lays down rules for Homa ... | 108 |
| „ —referred to ... | 113,224 |
| „ —declares water-pouring at Shrāddha, to be obliga- tory ... | 240 |
| „ —lays down that Shrāddha should be offered by one to those to whom his father offers it ... | 242 |
| „ —lays down that the Rites of the Brāhma form of marriage, should be performed at the time of marriage itself ... | 52 |
| „ —declare that no Shrāddha is to be offered by one whose father is alive ... | 244 |
| „ —lays down libation into Fire, connection with offer- ings to the recent dead ... | 259 |
| „ —lays down <i>Sapiṇḍikarṇa</i> to be performed at the end of the year ... | 259 |
| „ —lays down that <i>one</i> ball shall not be offered to several Pits ... | 261 |
| „ —speaks of the Agnihotra ... | 327 |
| „ —prescribes the <i>Āgrayaṇa</i> sacrifice as compulsory for those who keep only the Domestic Fire ... | 333 |
| <i>Gṛhya</i> -rules—prescribe sacrifices by women ... | 459 |
| Grinding-stone—a ' slaughter-house ' for the Householder ... | 90 |
| Great Sacrifices—serve to expiate the sin involved in the using of the Hearth, etc. ... | 91-92 |
| „ —ordained for the Householder ... | 92 |
| „ —exact form of ... | 93 |
| „ —not to be performed simultaneously ... | 94 |

| | PAGE, |
|--|-------|
| Great Sacrifices—only those compulsory, to the performance whereof one is entitled | 95 |
| „ —daily performance of—saves one from the sins of the 'slaughter-house' | 96 |
| „ —must be performed, daily | 97 |
| „ —omission of—means death | 97 |
| „ —occasion for each, distinct | 100 |
| „ —neglector of—to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 175 |
| Grog-shop—equal in uncleanness to the oil-press | 384 |
| Guests—honouring of—is 'Offering to Men' | 93 |
| Guest—not to be invited | 95 |
| „ —a person invited, is not a | 95 |
| „ —is one, who comes unexpectedly | 95 |
| „ —has expectations from family-men | 105 |
| „ —to be fed—after the offering to Beings | 106 |
| „ —water to be offered to | 121 |
| „ —seat „ „ | 121 |
| „ —Food prepared to the best of one's ability—to be offered to | 121 |
| „ —is one who comes uninvited | 121 |
| „ —omitting to feed—in evening—specially sinful | 123 |
| „ —at least bedding, resting-place, water and kind words to be offered to | 124 |
| „ —Brāhmana staying in the house for one night, is to be treated as | 124 |
| „ —exact signification of—explained | 125 |
| „ —Āpastamba's rule for the honouring of | 125 |
| „ —a co-villager, not to be treated as | 125 |
| „ —companion, „ „ „ „ „ „ | 125 |
| „ —one coming during Householder's absence, may not be treated as | 126 |
| „ —one arriving during Householder's absence, where his wife and the Fires are—is to be treated as | 126 |
| „ —arriving in the evening, should not be dismissed | 127 |
| „ — „ timely or untimely, should not remain with- out food | 127 |
| „ —one should not eat what one does not offer to | 127 |
| „ —Honouring of—is conducive to Fame | 117 |
| „ — „ — „ „ „ Wealth | 127 |
| „ — „ — „ „ „ Longevity | 127 |
| „ — „ — „ „ „ Heaven | 127 |
| „ —entertainment of the various grades of | 128 |
| „ —Best entertainment for superior | 128 |
| „ —Inferior „ „ inferior | 128 |
| „ —Ordinary „ „ equal | 128 |
| „ —Seat to be offered to | 128 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------|
| Guest—Room to be offered to | 128 |
| " —Bed " " " " " " | 128 |
| " —Following " " " " " " | 128 |
| " —Attendance " " " " " " | 128 |
| " —Food to be provided for one—even though he arrive after the <i>Vaishvadeva</i> offering | 129 |
| " —Kṣātriya not—in Brāhmaṇa's house | 130 |
| " —Vaishya not—" " " " " " | 130 |
| " —Shūdra not—" " " " " " | 130 |
| " —Friends not to be treated as | 130 |
| " —Relations " " " " " " | |
| " —Teacher " " " " " " | |
| " —Kṣātriya arriving as—may be fed after Brāhmaṇa guests | 130 |
| " —Vaishya arriving as—should be fed with servants | 131 |
| " —Shūdra " " " " " " | 131 |
| " —attending upon | 335-340 |
| " —to be honoured with seat | 335 |
| " " " " food | 335 |
| " " " " bed | 335 |
| " " " " water | 335 |
| " " " " fruits and roots | 335 |
| " —imposter arriving as—not to be received | 335 |
| " —follower of improper occupations arriving as—not to be received | 335 |
| " —persons of cat-like behaviour—not to be received as... | 335 |
| " —hypocrites — " " " " " | 335 |
| " —logicians — " " " " " | 335 |
| " —persons of heron-like behaviour— " " " " | 335 |
| " —Vedic scholar to be honoured as | 337 |
| " —person accomplished in Veda—to be honoured as .. | 337 |
| " — " " " Observances— " " " " | 337 |
| " —householders — " " " " " | 337 |
| " —is the Lord of the world of Indra | 444 |

H.

| | |
|---|-----|
| Hairless man—not to be fed at Shrāddhas | 172 |
| Hand—the taking hold of—the predominant factor in marriage | 20 |
| Happiness—has its root in Contentment | 314 |
| Harvest—not to be eaten out of—without performing Agnihotra | 331 |
| Harvest-Sacrifice—to be offered | 330 |
| " " — " performed in the Autumn | 333 |
| " " —not necessary at every harvest | 333 |
| <i>Harirbhuk</i> | 215 |
| " —the Pits of Kṣātriyas | 217 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| <i>Haviṣmat</i> pitṛs—worshipped by Kṣattriyas | 211 |
| „ „ —sons of Āṅgiras | 218 |
| Healers—to be avoided at Sacrifices | 174 |
| Hearth—a 'slaughter-house' for the Householder | 90 |
| „ —and other 'slaughter houses'—there is no prohibition for | 91 |
| Heaven—secured by honouring guests | 127 |
| Hells—twentyone—enumerated | 385 |
| Hermaphrodite—food of—to be avoided | 463 |
| Heron-like persons—not to be received as guests | 385 |
| „ „ —Food only to be given to | 385 |
| „ — Brāhmaṇas—not to be given gifts | 447 |
| „ — behaviour—defined... .. | 452 |
| <i>Hiraṇyagarbha</i> —is Prajāpati | 211 |
| „ „ —Manu is the son of | 211 |
| <i>Homa</i> —is 'offering to the gods' | 93 |
| „ —is the means of worshipping gods... .. | 105 |
| „ —to be offered daily—out of food cooked for Viśhvêdevas | 108 |
| Honey—abstention from—to be withdrawn after Vedic Texts .. | 15 |
| Honey-Mixture—to be offered to King | 138 |
| „ „ — „ Accomplished Student | 138 |
| „ „ — „ Teacher | 138 |
| „ „ — „ Son-in-law | 138 |
| „ „ — „ Priest | 138 |
| „ „ — „ Father-in-law | 138 |
| „ „ — „ Maternal uncle | 138 |
| „ „ —not to be offered to a Shûdra | 139 |
| „ „ — „ by a Shûdra | 139 |
| „ „ —Mahâbhârta speaks of—as being offered by Shûdra Vidura to Vāsudeva | 139 |
| „ „ —in cases like above, the term is used figuratively, in the sense of curd | 139 |
| „ „ —is the name of a Rite | 140 |
| „ „ —King to be honoured with—at a sacrificial performance | 140 |
| „ „ —Learned man to be honoured with—at a sacrificial performance | 140 |
| „ „ —to be served on the ground | 246 |
| <i>Hotṛ</i> —duties described in the Three Vedas | 10 |
| Household—entrance into | 18 |
| Household-implements—a 'Slaughter-house' for the Householder | 90 |
| House—stands for wife | 18 |
| Household duties—are those to whom sacrificer offers sacrifices | 186 |
| Householder-state—to be entered into, after learning one, two or three Vedas | 18 |
| „ —to be entered into, having learnt Veda, without deviating from the Vows of Studentship | 18 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| House-holder—defined as one who has taken a wife ... | 13 |
| „ —state of—should follow after Learning of Veda ... | 14 |
| „ —state of—only learned man entitled to ... | 14 |
| „ —entrance into state of—essential ... | 22 |
| „ —Duties of | 87 |
| „ —should perform the <i>Grhya</i> rites in the marriage-fire | 87 |
| „ —should perform the 'Five Sacrifices' ... | 87 |
| „ — „ „ daily cooking | 87 |
| „ —to perform rites in association with his wife ... | 88 |
| „ —There are five 'Slaughter-Houses' for ... | 90 |
| „ —The Five Great Sacrifices prescribed for ... | 92 |
| „ —all states derive support from the state of the | 101 |
| „ —men in all three states are sustained, with knowledge, by the | 102 |
| „ —men in all three states are sustained, with food, by the | 102 |
| „ state of—is the highest state | 102 |
| „ —state of—to be kept up with care | 103 |
| „ —great restraint demanded from | 103 |
| „ —sages, Pitrs, Gods, Elementals and guests have expectations from | 105 |
| „ —should fulfil his duties towards gods, sages, guests, elementals and Pitrs | 105 |
| „ —to worship sages by Vedic Study | 105 |
| „ — „ gods by Homa | 105 |
| „ — „ Pitrs by Shrâddha | 105 |
| „ — „ men with food | 105 |
| „ — „ Elementals with Bali | 105 |
| „ —giving alms, obtains a reward | 107 |
| „ —should provide for reception of guests during his absence | 126 |
| „ —depending on food cooked in other families, is born as one of cattle | 126 |
| „ —should not drive away guest arriving in the evening | 127 |
| „ —not to eat what has not been offered to guest... .. | 127 |
| „ —eating before guests, is devoured by dogs and vultures | 134 |
| „ —eating before newly married girls, is devoured by dogs and vultures | 134 |
| „ —eating before maidens, is devoured by dogs and vultures | 134 |
| „ —eating before sick persons, is devoured by dogs and vultures | 134 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| House-holder—eating before pregnant women, is devoured by dogs and vultures | 134 |
| „ —should eat with wife, after guests, his own people and servants have dined | 134 |
| „ —to eat what remains after the worship of gods, sages, men, Pitṛs and Household deities | 135 |
| „ —to eat after the Five Sacrifices | 135 |
| „ —cooking for himself, eats sin | 137 |
| „ —should eat only the remains of sacrifices | 137 |
| „ —should not have food cooked for himself alone, even if nothing is left after the feeding of guests and others | 138 |
| „ —to receive the King with 'Honey-Mixture' | 138 |
| „ — „ the Priest „ „ „ .. | 138 |
| „ — „ „ Accomplished Student with 'Honey-Mixture' | 138 |
| „ „ „ Teacher with 'Honey-Mixture' | 138 |
| „ — „ „ Son-in-law „ „ „ .. | 138 |
| „ — „ „ Father-in-law „ „ „ .. | 138 |
| „ — „ „ Maternal Uncle with „ „ „ .. | 138 |
| „ —his wife to make Bali-offerings out of food cook- ed in the evening | 143 |
| „ —to repeat the Five Sacrifices in the evening except Brahmajña and Pitṛyajña | 143 |
| „ —to offer the 'Five-Sacrifices' into the 'sense- organs' | 323 |
| „ —to offer seat, food, bed, water, fruits, roots to guests | 335 |
| „ —to be honoured as guest | 337 |
| „ —Mendicant not to be regarded as | 338 |
| „ —Recluse „ „ „ „ .. | 338 |
| „ —Student „ „ „ „ .. | 338 |
| „ —Renunciate „ „ „ „ .. | 338 |
| „ —to give food to those who cannot afford to cook their own food | 338 |
| „ —to apportion food to all beings, without detri- ment to himself | 338 |
| „ —not to quarrel with Parents, wife, son, or rela- tions and others | 443 |
| „ —renouncing quarrel with relations, becomes freed from all sins | 443 |
| „ —at the end—shall consign everything to his son | 449 |
| „ —alone in solitude—shall meditate upon what is good | 449 |
| Householder's stage—end of | 499 |
| 'Huta'—name of a Great Sacrifice | 98 |
| „ —a name for offerings into Fire | 99 |
| Hypocrites—not to be received as guests | 335 |

I

| | PAGE. |
|---|---------|
| Ignorant man—fed at <i>Shrāddha</i> —swallows flaming iron-balls after death | 156 |
| „ „ --with learned father, is superior to the learned man with ignorant father | 160 |
| „ „ --not to be fed at <i>Shrāddha</i> | 172 |
| „ „ -- <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> shall not eat at a Sacrifice performed by | 459 |
| „ „ --Feeding of—deprecated | 155-156 |
| „ „ --fed at <i>Shrāddha</i> , carries <i>Pitrs</i> to hell | 156 |
| „ „ --should not receive gifts | 447 |
| Implements—a 'slaughter-house' for the Householder | 90 |
| Imposters—not to be received as guests | 335 |
| Initiated for sacrifices—food of one—to be avoided | 463 |
| Injunction—exact meaning of | 72 |
| <i>Indra</i> —Bali offering to | 11 |
| Intercourse—interdicted before puberty | 71 |
| Insects—offerings for—to be placed on the ground | 115 |
| Interpretation—Science of—to be studied by the Accomplished Student | 320 |
| Invalids—to be avoided at <i>Shrāddha</i> and Sacrifice | 175 |
| Invitation—method of—to <i>Shrāddha</i> | 206 |
| „ --to be given to qualified <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> on the day preceding <i>Shrāddha</i> , or on the same day | 206 |
| <i>Iṣṭi</i> -sacrifices—only on Moonless and Full-Moon days and on Solstices—to be performed by <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> living by Gleaning and Picking | 311 |
| <i>Itihāsas</i> —to be studied by the Accomplished Student | 320 |

J

| | |
|--|-----|
| <i>Japa</i> —is 'Ahuta' | 99 |
| <i>Jñānuniṣṭha</i> —in the sense of Renunciate | 159 |
| <i>Jyēṣṭha Sāmas</i> —are <i>Sāman-mantars</i> in the <i>Āraṇyaka</i> | 204 |
| <i>Jyotiṣṭoma</i> | 54 |

K

| | |
|--|-----|
| ' <i>Kāḥ svidekāki charati</i> '—a Vedic story | 249 |
| <i>Kālushāka</i> —specially suitable material for <i>Shrāddha</i> | 231 |
| ' <i>Kamaṇḍalu</i> '—name based upon shape, not material... .. | 346 |
| <i>Kauṣītaki Brāhmaṇa</i> | 324 |

INDEX TO VOL. II

| | PAGE |
|--|-------|
| <i>Kavi</i> —is Bhṛgu | 218 |
| <i>Kavi</i> —father of <i>Somapā</i> Pitṛs | 218 |
| <i>Karmanishṭhu</i> —Householder | 159 |
| <i>Kalpasūtra</i> | 25 |
| ' <i>Kāya</i> '—stands for <i>Prajāpati</i> | 66 |
| King—to be received with the 'Honey-Mixture' | 138 |
| „ — „ honoured „ Honey-Mixture, at the approach of a sacrificial performance | 140 |
| „ —the word standing for all wealthy castes | 341 |
| „ —equal in uncleanness to ten brothels | 384 |
| Knowledge—shines by study | 321 |
| <i>Kṛchchra</i> —penance—to be performed by one eating prohibited food | 471 |
| <i>Kṣattriya</i> —no diversity of <i>Gotra</i> and <i>Pravara</i> , among | 25 |
| „ — <i>Gotra</i> of—determined by that of his priest | 25 |
| „ —must marry a <i>Kṣattriya</i> girl | 35 |
| „ —may „ „ <i>Vaishya</i> „ | 37 |
| „ — „ „ „ <i>Shūdra</i> „ | 37 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ only under abnormal circumstances | 39 |
| „ — <i>Āsura</i> , <i>Gāndharva</i> , <i>Rākṣasa</i> , <i>Paishācha</i> forms of marriage—lawful for | 46 |
| „ — <i>Rākṣasa</i> form of marriage, specially commended for | 47 |
| „ — <i>Prājāpatya</i> , <i>Gāndharva</i> , <i>Rākṣasa</i> forms of marriage— —lawful for | 47 |
| „ — <i>Āsura</i> and <i>Paishācha</i> forms of marriage—unlawful for | 47 |
| „ — <i>Rākṣasa</i> form of marriage, is the best form for | 49 |
| „ — <i>Gāndharva</i> - <i>Rākṣasa</i> mixed form of marriage—un- lawful for | 49-50 |
| „ —For the—there should be giving away of girl, when there is mutual love between Bride and Bridegroom | 64 |
| „ girl—marrying a <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> —should take hold of arrow | 70 |
| „ —not a guest in <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> 's house | 130 |
| „ —arriving as guest—may be fed after <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> -guests | 130 |
| „ — <i>Haviṣmat</i> Pitṛs—worshipped by | 211 |
| „ —No usage regarding <i>Gotra</i> , among | 215 |
| „ —does not retain memory of <i>Gotra</i> | 215 |
| „ —not entitled to the name ' <i>Havirbhuk</i> ' | 215 |
| „ — <i>Havirbhuk</i> s, the Pitṛs of | 217 |
| <i>Kuhū</i> —Daily Offering to | 109 |
| <i>Kuṇḍa</i> son—defined | 195 |
| <i>Kumbhī</i> —is jar | 307 |
| <i>Kusha</i> blades—Balls to be offered upon—at <i>Shrāddha</i> | 238 |
| „ „ —Hand to wiped upon— „ „ | 238 |
| „ „ —essential for <i>Shrāddha</i> | 274 |
| „ „ — „ „ Sacrifice | 274 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| ' <i>Kusūladhānyakāḥ</i> ' | 306 |
| ' <i>Kusūla</i> '—described as granary | 306 |
| ' <i>Kutapa</i> '—blanket made of goat-wool—to be offered as seat at <i>Shrāddha</i> | 251 |

L

| | |
|--|---------|
| Leavings—of <i>Shrāddha</i> —to remain until dismissal of <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> | 281 |
| Learned man—being satisfied—absorbs the merit of feeding 1,000 ignorant men | 154 |
| „ „ —with ignorant father—is inferior to ignorant man with learned father | 160 |
| „ „ —to be honoured with the 'Honey-Mixture,' at the approach of sacrificial performance | 140 |
| „ „ —used in the sense of either <i>Priest</i> or Accom- plished Student | 140 |
| „ „ —one who knows the entire <i>Veda</i> | 152 |
| <i>Lēpabhāginām</i> | 239 |
| Liberality—essential at <i>Shrāddha</i> | 274 |
| Life-breath—offered into Speech | 324 |
| „ —The Imperishable Sacrifice rests in | 324 |
| Livelihood—Means of | 297,300 |
| Logicians—not to be received as guests | 335 |
| „ —Food only to be given to | 336 |
| ' <i>Loha</i> '—in the sense of Black goat | 285 |
| „ — „ „ goat, red all over | 285 |
| „ — „ „ Heron | 285 |
| Longevity—secured by the honouring of guests | 127 |

M

| | |
|---|-----------------|
| <i>Madhuparka</i> —Eating of beef in | 285 |
| „ —Offering of the cow, optional in | 18 |
| <i>Maghā-Shrāddha</i> —not binding on <i>Agnihotra</i> | 298 |
| <i>Mahābhārata</i> | 138,249,482,492 |
| „ —speaks of 'Honey-Mixture' offered by the <i>Shūdra Vidura</i> to <i>Vāsudeva</i> | 139 |
| <i>Mahānāmnikā</i> | 249 |
| Maiden—in the sense of a girl who has not experienced sexual intercourse | 32,61 |
| „ —one who has not passed through marriage rites | 60 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|--------|
| Maidens—to be fed immediately after guests ... | 133 |
| Maidenhood—not destroyed by Paishācha marriage... | 60 |
| Mantras—undergo transmutation ... | 242 |
| Manuṣya-Yajña—is offering to guests ... | 93, 98 |
| „ —also called 'Prāśhita' ... | 98 |
| Manu—son of Hiranyagarbha ... | 211 |
| „ —Marichi and others—sons of ... | 211 |
| Marichi ... | 105 |
| Marichi and others—sons of Manu ... | 211 |
| „ „ „ —constitute the 'Body of Pits' ... | 211 |
| Marriage-fire—'Grhya rites' to be performed in ... | 87 |
| „ —not to be maintained by Shūdra ... | 88-89 |
| „ relations—lords of the Region of the Waters ... | 444 |
| „ At—Fire to be produced by rubbing together two sticks ... | 88 |
| Marriageable girls ... | 23-24 |
| Maruts—Offering to—at the door ... | 111 |
| Marital life—Duties of ... | 71 |
| Marriage—as sacrament—only with a girl of the same caste ... | 35 |
| „ —a sacramental rite ... | 20 |
| „ —a refining process ... | 20 |
| „ —denotes <i>taking hold of the hand</i> ... | 20 |
| „ —is a sacrament for maidens ... | 21 |
| „ —Who is entitled to ... | 21 |
| „ —Injunction of—enjoins a sacrament ... | 21 |
| „ —brings into existence the 'wife' ... | 21 |
| „ —serves, through the wife, the visible and invisible ends of man ... | 21 |
| „ —to be done with a girl, who is not 'Sapinda' of his mother ... | 23 |
| „ —to be done with a girl, who is not of the same gotra as his father ... | 23 |
| „ —to be done with a girl, not born of unlawful intercourse ... | 23 |
| „ —to be done with a girl, who is beyond the fifth step of relationship on mother's side ... | 23 |
| „ —not to be done with a girl descended from one's maternal grandfather or great-grandfather ... | 23 |
| „ —not with mother's sister ... | 23 |
| „ — „ descendant of maternal great-grandmother ... | 23 |
| „ — „ a girl of the same gotra ... | 23 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ as one's mother, according to Vashishṭha ... | 24 |
| „ —with a girl of the same gotra, necessitates her renunciation ... | 24 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ necessitates the performance of Chāndrāyana ... | 24 |

| | |
|---|----|
| Marriage—with a girl of the same <i>Pravara</i> , necessitates her renunciation | 24 |
| „ —with a girl of the same <i>Pravara</i> , necessitates the performance of <i>Chândrâyana</i> ... | 24 |
| „ —not with the maternal uncle's daughter | 24 |
| „ —not between persons of the same <i>Pravara</i> | 24 |
| „ —Differentiating characteristics of the right forms of | 63 |
| „ —permissible with a girl of the same <i>gotra</i> , if <i>Pravara</i> is different (according to Gautama) ... | 24 |
| „ —not permissible between parties of the same <i>gotra</i> | 24 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ „ <i>Pravara</i> | 24 |
| „ —with a girl beyond the seventh step, among relations on Father's side | 25 |
| „ —not with a girl born of Niyoga | 28 |
| „ relationship—to be avoided with certain families | 29 |
| „ — „ „ „ a family where religious rites have been abandoned | 29 |
| „ —to be avoided with a male-less family... | 29 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ Veda-less „ | 29 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ family, members of which are woolly | 29 |
| „ —to be avoided with a family, members of which suffer from Piles | 29 |
| „ —to be avoided with a family, members of which suffer from Pthisis | 29 |
| „ —to be avoided with a family, members of which suffer from Dyspepsia | 29 |
| „ —to be avoided with a family, members of which suffer from Epilepsy | 29 |
| „ —to be avoided with a family, members of which suffer from Leucoderma | 29 |
| „ —to be avoided with a family, members of which suffer from Leprosy | 29 |
| „ —Prohibition of —with mixed families | 29 |
| „ —with tawny-haired girls, deprecated | 30 |
| „ — „ a girl with superfluous limbs, deprecated | 30 |
| „ —with diseased girls, deprecated | 30 |
| „ — „ hairless „ | 30 |
| „ — „ girls with too much hair, | 30 |
| „ — „ garrulous girls, | 30 |
| „ — „ girls with reddish eyes, | 30 |
| „ —deprecated, with a girl bearing name of an aster- iam | 30 |
| „ —deprecated, with a girl bearing name of a tree | 30 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Marriage—deprecatcd, with girl bearing name of a river ... | 30 |
| „ —deprecatcd, with girl bearing name after a low-caste ... | 30 |
| „ —deprecatcd, with girl bearing name of a mountain ... | 30 |
| „ —deprecatcd, with girl bearing name of a bird ... | 30 |
| „ —deprecatcd, with girl bearing name of a serpent ... | 30 |
| „ —deprecatcd, with girl bearing name of a slave ... | 30 |
| „ —deprecatcd with girl bearing a terror-inspiring name ... | 30 |
| „ —commended with a girl with faultless body ... | 31 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ an agreeable name ... | 31 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ a swan-like gait ... | 31 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ an elephant-like gait... .. | 31 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ fine hair ... | 31 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ teeth ... | 31 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ tender limbs ... | 31 |
| „ —must be with one not married already ... | 32 |
| „ —with a girl younger than oneself ... | 32 |
| „ — „ „ „ with brother, commended ... | 33 |
| „ —with brotherless girl deprecatcd ... | 33 |
| „ — „ a girl of unknown parentage, deprecatcd ... | 33 |
| „ —not accomplished, if it involves transgression of prohibitions not based upon perceptible causes ... | 34 |
| „ —in one's own caste, the first to be commended ... | 35 |
| „ —as a spiritual sacrament, must be in the same caste ... | 35 |
| „ — „ „ „ should be with one girl, and of the same caste ... | 35 |
| „ —contracted with material or physical motives, may be with girls of lower castes also ... | 37 |
| „ —of Brāhmaṇa with a Kṣātriya girl ... | 37 |
| „ — „ „ „ Vaishya „ ... | 37 |
| „ — „ „ „ Shūdra „ ... | 37 |
| „ — „ Kṣātriya „ Vaishya „ ... | 37 |
| „ — „ „ „ Shūdra „ ... | 37 |
| „ — „ Vaishya „ Shūdra „ ... | 37 |
| „ — „ Shūdra—only with a Shūdra „ ... | 37 |
| „ — „ Brāhmaṇa with Shūdra girl, permitted (37) and also prohibited ... | 38 |
| „ — „ Kṣātriya with Shūdra girl, permitted (37) and also prohibited ... | 38 |
| „ — „ Brāhmaṇa with Shūdra girl, permitted only under abnormal circumstances ... | 39 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Marriage—of Kṣattriya with Shûdra girl, permitted only under abnormal circumstances... .. | 39 |
| „ — „ Twice-born man with Shûdra girl, deprecated ... | 40 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ makes him an outcast ... | 40 |
| „ — „ Brâhmana with Shûdra girl, lands him in perdition... .. | 41 |
| „ —Eight forms of | 45 |
| „ rite—ends with the seeing of the constellation Ursa Major | 45 |
| „ „ —marked by the holding of hands | 45 |
| „ —Six forms of—lawful for the Brâhmana | 46 |
| „ —Four forms of— „ „ Kṣattriya | 46 |
| „ —Three forms of— „ „ Vaishya | 46 |
| „ — „ „ — „ „ Shûdra | 46 |
| „ —Four forms of—commended for the Brâhmana—Bṛâhma, Daiva, Ârṣa and Prâjâpatya | 47 |
| „ —Râkṣasa form—commended for Kṣattriya | 47 |
| „ —Âsura form—commended for Vaishya | 47 |
| „ — „ „ — „ „ Shûdra | 47 |
| „ —Prâjâpatya, Gândharva and Râkṣasa—lawful for Kṣattriya and others | 48 |
| „ —Âsura and Paishâcha forms—interdicted for all | 48 |
| „ —Râkṣasa form, permissible for the Brâhmana, according to some | 48 |
| „ —Brâhmana form, best for Brâhmana | 48 |
| „ —Râkṣasa „ „ Kṣattriya | 49 |
| „ —Paishâcha „ defined | 58 |
| „ —mixed Gândharva-Râkṣasa form—lawful for Kṣattriya | 49-50 |
| „ — „ „ „ —example of | 50 |
| „ —Gândharva form, defined | 57 |
| „ —Râkṣasa form, „ „ „ „ | 58 |
| „ —Brâhmana form, „ „ „ „ | 51 |
| „ —Daiva form, „ „ „ „ | 54 |
| „ —Ârṣa form, „ „ „ „ | 55 |
| „ —Prâjâpatya form, „ „ „ „ | 55 |
| „ —Âsura form „ „ „ „ | 57 |
| „ —The seventh step—the final stage of | 52 |
| „ —complete only at the 'seventh step' | 52 |
| „ —commended—when daughter is given away with water only | 64 |
| „ —'with water only' means that the Father should impose no conditions | 64 |
| „ —quality of sons born of Brâhmana, Daiva, Ârṣa and Prâjâpatya | 65-66 |
| „ —quality of sons born of inferior forms of | 69 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|--------|
| Marriage—Unblamable offspring from unblamable... | 69 |
| „ —Blameworthy offspring from blameworthy | 69 |
| „ —the rites of 'taking the hand' prescribed for bride of the same caste as the bridegroom | 70 |
| „ rites—in case of girls marrying higher castes | 70 |
| „ After—pair should observe certain vows, for a few days... | 71 |
| „ —Rules regarding | 83 |
| „ —In daughter's—Father should accept no consideration | 83 |
| „ —In daughter's—by accepting anything—Father be- comes a 'child-seller' | 83 |
| „ --in Âṛṣa form of—presentation of a cow and bull to the girl's father, permissible, according to some | 84 |
| „ --in Âṛṣa form of—presentation of a cow and bull, not permissible | 84 |
| Maternal relations—lords of the world of Vishvêdêvas | 444 |
| Maternal uncle—to be received with 'Honey-Mixture' | 188 |
| --lord of Earth | 444 |
| Meaning—Comprehension of—the sole end of Vedic study | 3 |
| Means of livelihood | 297 |
| Meat-selling—reprehensible—even when done with righteous motive | 174 |
| Meat-seller—to be avoided at Shrâddha and Sacrifice | 174 |
| Meat—vAvoidance of—to be withdrawn, after learning the text of Veda | 7 |
| „ —offered at Shrâddha—only seasoning for the Rice offered | 148 |
| „ unforbidden—is 'sacrificial food' | 275 |
| Men—to be worshipped with food | 105 |
| „ —born from sages | 220 |
| Mendicant—seeking for food—to be fed at Shrâddha... | 256 |
| „ —not to be treated as guest | 338 |
| • Milk—to be served on the ground | 246 |
| „ —is 'sacrificial food' | 275 |
| Mimâṃsâs-ûtra | 7, 289 |
| Miser—Food given by—to be avoided | 463 |
| Mitrâvaruṇa—story of—to be related at Shrâddha | 249 |
| Mortar and Pestle—a 'slaughter-house' for the Householder | 90 |
| 'Mother's Sapiṇḍa'—only up to three degrees, according to some | 23 |
| „ —extends up to fifth degree | 23 |
| „ —means mother's relationship | 23 |

N

| | |
|--|---------|
| 'Namo vah pitaraḥ,' etc. | 240-241 |
| 'Namah'—the mantra ordained for the Shûdra | 145 |
| 'Naiṣṭhika'—student | 1 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Nigada-mantras</i> | 241 |
| ' <i>Niṣṭhā</i> '—is 'end' | 1 |
| <i>Nirukta</i> —describes Pitṛs as Beings occupying the Middle Regions... .. | 242 |
| „ —quoted in support of honorific signification of the Plural | 265 |
| ' <i>Nirākṛti</i> '—is one who neglects the Great Sacrifices ... | 175 |
| „ —means 'one devoid of Vedic learning'—according to some | 176 |
| <i>Nivāra</i> and other wild-growing grains are 'sacrificial food' | 275 |
| <i>Nigama</i> —distinguished from <i>Sarisaridichyā</i> | 72-78 |
| <i>Nigama</i> and <i>Yama</i> | 458 |
| <i>Niyoga</i> —One who follows—is called ' <i>Didhīṣipati</i> ' | 194 |
| „ —Girl born of—should not be married | 28 |
| „ —even though sanctioned by <i>Smṛti</i> —should be avoided | 441 |
| Non-eatability—of four kinds | 472 |

O

| | |
|---|-----|
| Oblations—thrown in water, reach the Sun | 100 |
| „ —thrown into the mouth-fire of the learned <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> , saves from sin and trouble | 120 |
| Observances—of the Accomplished Student | 316 |
| „ — „ —conducive to Heaven | 316 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ Longevity | 316 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ Fame | 316 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ —obligatory | 316 |
| „ —may be kept | 457 |
| „ —By keeping—without keeping the Restraints, man falls | 457 |
| Occupations—irreproachable, for the <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> , enumerated ... | 302 |
| „ —six, for the <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> , enumerated | 308 |
| Offerings to gods—daily—essential | 97 |
| „ „ —consists in pouring libations into Fire and throwing <i>Bali</i> on altars | 98 |
| „ guests—daily—essential | 97 |
| „ dependants—daily—essential | 97 |
| „ Pitṛs—daily—essential | 97 |
| „ one's own self—daily—essential... .. | 97 |
| „ into Fire—are ' <i>Huta</i> ' | 99 |
| „ to Elementals—are ' <i>Prahuta</i> ' | 99 |
| „ to <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> (guests)—are ' <i>Brāhmya-huta</i> ' | 99 |
| „ of water to, Pitṛs—are ' <i>Prāshita</i> ' | 99 |
| „ to <i>Agni</i> —first—daily | 100 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Offerings—to Soma—daily | 109 |
| " — „ Agni-Soma | 109 |
| " — „ Vishvêdêvas | 109 |
| " — „ Dhanvantari | 109 |
| " — „ Kuhu | 109 |
| " — „ Anumati | 109 |
| " — „ Prajâpati | 109 |
| " — „ Dyauh | 109 |
| " — „ Prithivî | 109 |
| " — „ Sviṣṭakṛt | 109 |
| — at the door—to the Maruts | 111 |
| — to Apas—in water... .. | 111 |
| — „ Vanaspatis—on the Pestle and Mortar | 111 |
| — „ <i>Shri</i> —on the head | 112 |
| — „ Bhadrakālî—on the feet | 112 |
| — for Brahman—in the centre of the Homestead | 112 |
| " — „ <i>Vâstôpati</i> — „ „ „ | 112 |
| — to <i>Vishvêdêvas</i> —in the sky | 113 |
| " — „ Elementals roaming in the day | 113 |
| " — „ „ „ „ night | 113 |
| — „ be made in the upper dwelling | 113 |
| — Remnant of—to be offered towards the South—to the <i>Pitrs</i> | 113 |
| — for dogs— to be placed on the ground | 115 |
| — for outcasts— „ „ „ „ | 115 |
| — „ <i>Chândâlas</i> — „ „ „ „ | 115 |
| — „ persons afflicted with filthy disease—to be placed on the ground | 115 |
| — „ birds—to placed on the ground | 115 |
| — „ insects— „ „ „ „ | 115 |
| — thrown into the mouth-fire of Brâhmapas, effulgent with learning, saves from sin... .. | 120 |
| — none—out of the food cooked for a guest arriving after the <i>Vaishvadêva</i> offering | 129 |
| — for gods—to be given to the learned | 156 |
| — „ <i>Pitrs</i> — „ „ „ „ | 156 |
| — „ „ — „ „ „ man excelling in learn- ing | 159 |
| — „ gods— to be given to the man excelling in learn- ing, austerities, Vedic study and Rites | 195 |
| — to the ignorant, fruitless | 165 |
| — „ „ learned, fruitful | 165 |
| — eaten by the enemy—become futile | 166 |
| — to be given to the <i>Shrotriya</i> | 166 |
| — Sacrificial—not to be presented to unlearned Brâhmana | 189 |
| — to gods and <i>Pitrs</i> —nullified by the sons born of other men's wives | 196 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Offerings—to gods—defiled by the look of Chāṇḍāla | 254 |
| “ “ Pitṛs— “ “ “ “ | 254 |
| “ “ gods— “ “ “ Cock ... | 254 |
| “ “ Pitṛs— “ “ “ “ ... | 254 |
| “ “ gods— “ “ “ Pig ... | 254 |
| “ “ Pitṛs— “ “ “ “ ... | 254 |
| “ “ gods— “ “ “ Unclean woman ... | 254 |
| “ “ Pitṛs— “ “ “ “ ... | 254 |
| “ “ gods— “ “ “ Eunuch ... | 254 |
| “ “ Pitṛs— “ “ “ “ ... | 254 |
| “ —Disposal of ... | 275 |
| Offering-materials—Relative merits of ... | 288 |
| Oil-press—equal in uncleanness to ten Slaughter-houses ... | 384 |
| Others—Everything dependent upon—is painful ... | 428 |
| Outcasts—Offering for—to be placed on the ground... | 115 |
| “ —undeserving of gifts at Shrāddhas and Sacrifices ... | 171 |

P

| | | | |
|---|--|-----|---------|
| Pain—is that which depends on others | ... | ... | 429 |
| <i>Pañcrajanika</i> Homa—not into Common Fire | ... | ... | 202 |
| <i>Pañkti-pāraṇa</i> —defined | ... | ... | 201-205 |
| <i>Pāñktya</i> —Defined | ... | ... | 197 |
| <i>Pañchāgnividyā</i> —described in Chhândogya Upaniṣad | ... | ... | 203 |
| <i>Pañchāgni</i> —Different explanations for | ... | ... | 203 |
| <i>Puṣhācha</i> —the lowest form of marriage | ... | ... | 45 |
| „ marriage—lawful for Vaishya | ... | ... | 46 |
| „ „ — „ „ Shūdra | ... | ... | 46 |
| „ „ —defined | ... | ... | 58 |
| „ „ —does not deprive the girl of 'maidenhood' | ... | ... | 59-60 |
| „ „ —Subsequent performance of rites, essential in | ... | ... | 60 |
| „ „ —rites—not essential in | ... | ... | 62 |
| „ „ —Intercourse—not the predominant factor in | ... | ... | 62 |
| „ „ — „ —only secondary factor in | ... | ... | 68 |
| „ „ —Embrace, kissing, etc., in | ... | ... | 62 |
| <i>Pāṇini</i> — | 53, 67, 68, 72, 120, 168, 187, 196, 252, 311, 369, | 382 | |
| <i>Pañchāla</i> country | ... | ... | 164 |
| <i>Parāshara</i> —a gotra-name | ... | ... | 25 |
| „ - gotra—Pravaras of—Vashiṣṭhya, Gārgya and Pārāsharya | ... | ... | 23-24 |
| <i>Parivarischyā</i> —distinguished from <i>Niyama</i> | ... | ... | 72-78 |
| „ —discussed | ... | ... | 74-75 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|---------|
| <i>Pārvaṇa-Shrāddha</i> —to be performed in the Marriage-Fire ... | 87 |
| " " —to be offered—after <i>Sapīṇḍīkarana</i> ... | 260 |
| " " —the archetype of all <i>Shrāddhas</i> ... | 264 |
| <i>Paramēsthīprāṇa</i> —Fire | 96 |
| <i>Pārashva Shūdra</i> | 164 |
| 'Partakers of Smearings'—at <i>Shrāddha</i> | 238 |
| <i>Paryāgnīkarana</i> —consists in cleaning of things | 346 |
| Penances—performed under pretext—go to Evil Spirits ... | 454 |
| Personal cleanliness—to be observed by the Accomplished Student | 344 |
| Physician—Gift to—becomes pus and blood | 199 |
| Picking—explained | 302 |
| <i>Pīṇḍānūhīryaka</i> —to be offered every month | 146 |
| " " " on the Moonless day | 146 |
| " " " after <i>Pitṛyajña</i> | 146 |
| " " " by <i>Kṣātrīya</i> and <i>Vaiśya</i> also | 146 |
| <i>Pīṇḍapitṛyajña</i> —not to be offered by one whose father is alive ... | 244 |
| " —not to be offered into Common Fire | 293 |
| Pious vanity—to be avoided | 485 |
| <i>Pitṛs</i> —Remnants of offerings to be offered to—towards the South ... | 113 |
| " —Rites in honor of—become lost, if presented to ignorant <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> | 119 |
| " —Food offered at rites in honor of—should be given to a learned <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> | 152 |
| " —Offerings for—to be given to the learned man | 156 |
| " — <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> to be carefully examined, at Rites in honor of | 170 |
| " —have expectations from family-men | 105 |
| " —to be worshipped with <i>Shrāddha</i> | 105 |
| " —attend upon invited <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> | 207 |
| " —follow " " | 207 |
| " —are foremost gods | 209 |
| " " free from anger | 209 |
| " " intent on purity | 209 |
| " " chaste | 209 |
| " " rid of all means of offence | 209 |
| " " supremely blessed | 209 |
| " —Origin of | 211-220 |
| " —Mode of worshipping | 211 |
| " — <i>Somapās</i> —worshipped by <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> | 211 |
| " — <i>Haviṣmat</i> — " " <i>Kṣātrīyas</i> | 211 |
| " —are the sons of <i>Marīchi</i> and other sages | 211 |
| " —Man's own forefathers, are his | 211 |
| " — <i>Somapa</i> —never spoken of as recipients of offerings ... | 212 |
| " —beings of tremendous power | 213 |
| " —of <i>Sādhyas</i> — <i>Somasads</i> | 216 |
| " — " <i>god</i> — <i>Agnisvāttas</i> | 216 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Pitṛs—of Daityas—Barhiṣads ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Dānavas— „ ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Yakṣas — „ ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Gandharvas— „ ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Urugas — „ ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Rākṣasas— „ ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Suparnas— „ ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Kinnaras— „ ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Brāhmaṇas—Somapās ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Kṣattriyas—Havirbhukts ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Vaiśhyas—Ājyapas ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Shūdras—Sukālins ... | 217 |
| “ — „ Brāhmaṇas : Anagnidagdhas, Agnidagdhas, Kāvyaś, Barhiṣads, Agniṣvāttas and Saumyas ... | 218 |
| “ — mentioned in the Veda—Anagnidagdha and the rest ... | 219 |
| “ — Endless sons and grandsons of the principal gaṇas of ... | 219 |
| “ — born of Sages ... | 220 |
| “ — pleased with what is offered in clean places... .. | 227 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ on water-banks... .. | 227 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ in secluded places ... | 227 |
| “ — Offering to—to be made after offerings to Agni and Soma-Yama | 230 |
| “ — to be saluted with mantras, at Shrāddhas | 239 |
| “ — Several meanings of the term | 241 |
| “ — described in the Nirukta as Beings occupying the Middle Regions | 242 |
| “ — to be thought of, when food is offered to Brāhmaṇas—at Shrāddha | 245 |
| “ — Stories, related at Shrāddha, liked by | 249 |
| “ — partake of food, so long as it is hot | 253 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ invitees eat silently | 258 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ “ do not describe the qualities of the food | 253 |
| “ — Offerings to—defiled by the look of Chāpāla | 254 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ Dog | 254 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ Pig | 254 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ Cock | 254 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ Unclean woman | 254 |
| “ — “ “ “ “ Eunuch | 254 |
| “ — Food to be offered to—at Sapindikaraṇa Shrāddha | 260 |
| “ — in connection with Sapindikaraṇa—stand for grandfather, great-grandfather and great-great-grandfather | 260 |
| “ — Offering of water, after bath, brings all reward of offering to... .. | 294 |
| “ — to be worshipped on Aṣṭakās | 425 |
| “ — “ “ Anvaṣṭakas | 425 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| <i>Pratigraha</i> —different from <i>Bhikṣā</i> | 304 |
| " —is acceptance of gifts, offered with a view to some transcendental result, and is received with <i>mantras</i> | 304 |
| Pride of austerities—to be avoided | 485 |
| Puberty—to be waited for, before intercourse | 71 |
| <i>Pulastya</i> —father of <i>Ājyapa Pitr̥s</i> | 218 |
| Pupils—to be corrected with the rod | 431 |
| " — " governed, according to law | 438 |
| <i>Purāṇas</i> —to be studied by the Accomplished Student | 320 |
| Purity—essential for sacrifices | 274 |

R

| | |
|---|-------|
| Rain—proceeds from the Sun... .. | 101 |
| " — Food produced from | 100 |
| <i>Rājan</i> —standing for all wealthy castes | 341 |
| <i>Rākṣasa</i> -marriage—defined | 58 |
| " —Distinction between <i>Gāndharva</i> and | 58 |
| " —takes away unprotected <i>Shrāddha</i> | 223 |
| Recluse—Duty of feeding—specially prescribed for | 102 |
| Religious student—not to do any teaching | 102 |
| Religious students—Two kinds of | 102 |
| Renunciate—Helping anybody, prohibited for | 102 |
| " —Expounding of the meaning of <i>Veda</i> , specially prescribed for | 102 |
| Renunciate—not to be treated as guest | 338 |
| Restriction—Example of—from <i>Shrauta</i> literature | 73 |
| " — " " " <i>Smārta</i> " | 73 |
| " —distinguished from <i>Preclusion</i> | 72-74 |
| Return—Wife to be taken after | 19 |
| " —is a rite, consisting in the offering of <i>Madhuparka</i> and other things, indicating end of study and return to Father's home | 19 |
| " —No actual—in cases where Study has been carried on under Father | 19 |
| " taken by some people to stand for that Bathing which forms part of marriage rites | 19 |
| " --connotes the renouncing of Restraints and Observances | 20 |
| <i>R̥gveda</i> | 61 |
| " —name applied to the <i>Samhita</i> text of Ten <i>Maṇḍalas</i> , divided into 64 <i>adhyāyas</i> | 168 |
| " —sacred to the gods | 406 |
| Red-haired man—not to be fed at <i>Shrāddha</i> | 172 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Sacrifice--Healers to be avoided at | 174 |
| " --Temple-attendants to be avoided at | 174 |
| " --Meat-sellers " " " " " " " " " " " " | 174 |
| " --Traders " " " " " " " " " " " " | 174 |
| " --Village servant . " " " " " " " " " " " " | 174 |
| " --King's servant " " " " " " " " " " " " | 174 |
| " --One with deformed nails, to be avoided at | 174 |
| " -- " " " black teeth, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 174 |
| " --Opposer of superiors, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 174 |
| " --Forsaker of Fire, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 174 |
| " --Userer, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 174 |
| " --The Invalid, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 175 |
| " --Cattle-tenderer, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 175 |
| " --Supersoder of Elder Brother,, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 175 |
| " --Neglector of the Great Sacrifices, to be avoided at | 175 |
| " --One inimical to Brāhmanas, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 175 |
| " -- " " superseded by younger brother, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 175 |
| " --Member of a company, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 175 |
| " --An actor, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 177 |
| " --Breaker of vows of continence, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 177 |
| " --Husband of a Shūdra woman, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 177 |
| " --Son of a remarried woman, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 177 |
| " --A one-eyed man, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 177 |
| " --One who admits his wife's paramour " " " " " " " " " " " " | 177 |
| " -- " " teaches for a stipulated fee " " " " " " " " " " " " | 178 |
| " -- " " is taught by a paid Teacher " " " " " " " " " " " " | 178 |
| " --Pupil of a Shūdra, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 178 |
| " --Teacher " " " " " " " " " " " " | 178 |
| " --One who is reprehensible in speech, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 178 |
| " --Son of an adultress, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 178 |
| " -- " " a widow, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 178 |
| " --Forsaker of Mother, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 179 |
| " -- " " Father, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 179 |
| " -- " " Superior, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 179 |
| " --One who is connected with outcasts, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 179 |
| " --House-burner, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " --Prisoner, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " --One who eats food of an adultress' son, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " --Seller of Soma, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " --Sea-voyager, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " --Bard, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " --Oil-dealer, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " --Perjuror, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " --One who sells his sacrificial merit, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " -- " " quarrels with his Father, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 182 |
| " --Keeper of a gambling-house, " " " " " " " " " " " " | 182 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Sacrifice—Drunkard, | 182 |
| " —One afflicted with foul disease, | 182 |
| " — " accused of sins, | 182 |
| " —The hypocrite, | 182 |
| " — " dealer in essence, | 182 |
| " —Maker of bows and arrows, | 183 |
| " —One whose wife dallies with another, | 183 |
| " — " who makes love to his Brother's widow, | 183 |
| " — " " injures a friend, | 183 |
| " — " " subsists by gambling, | 183 |
| " — " " is taught by his own son, | 183 |
| " —An epileptic, | 185 |
| " —One with scrofulous swellings, | 185 |
| " — " suffering from Leucoderma, | 185 |
| " —The backbiter, | 185 |
| " — " Lunatic | 185 |
| " — " blind man, | 185 |
| " — " derider of the Veda, | 185 |
| " — " tamer of Elephants, | 185 |
| " — " " Bulls, | 185 |
| " — " " Horses, | 185 |
| " — " " Camels, | 185 |
| " —One subsisting on stars, | 185 |
| " —Bird-keeper, | 185 |
| " —Teacher of warfare, | 185 |
| " —The diverter of water-courses, | 186 |
| " —Obstructor " " " | 186 |
| " —House-planner, | 186 |
| " —Messenger, | 186 |
| " —Tree-planter, | 186 |
| " —One who sports with dogs, | 186 |
| " —The Falconer, | 186 |
| " —Defiler of virgins, | 186 |
| " —The cruel man, | 186 |
| " —One subsisting on Shūdras, | 186 |
| " — " who sacrifices to gṛahas, | 186 |
| " — " devoid of Right Conduct, | 187 |
| " —Man without vigour, | 187 |
| " —The constant beggar, | 187 |
| " —One who lives by agriculture, | 187 |
| " — " suffering from Elephantiasis, | 187 |
| " — " who is ill spoken of, by good men, | 187 |
| " —The sheep-dealer | 188 |
| " — " buffalo-keeper, | 188 |
| " —Husband of a woman, who has had another husband, | 188 |
| to be avoided at ... | 188 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------|
| Sacrifice —Carrier of the dead, to be avoided at | 188 |
| " —nullified by sons of other men's wives | 196 |
| " —By neglecting invitation to, a Brâhmana incurs sin... | 208 |
| " —excelled by Shrâddha | 228 |
| " —sustainer of | 228 |
| " —King to be honoured with 'Honey-Mixture,' at the approach of | 140 |
| " —Learned Man | 140 |
| " —defiled by the look of Chândala | 254 |
| " — " " " Dog | 254 |
| " — " " " Pig | 254 |
| " — " " " Cock | 254 |
| " — " " " Unclean woman | 254 |
| " — " " " Eunuch | 254 |
| " —The syllable ' <i>ruchitam</i> ' to be pronounced at | 272 |
| " —Essentials for | 274 |
| " —The Imperishable—rests in Speech and Life-breath... | 324 |
| " —One should not go to a—uninvited | 358 |
| " —performed by the illiterate, to be avoided | 459 |
| " — " " a woman, | 459 |
| " — " " Eunuch, | 459 |
| " — " " the village-priest | 459 |
| " — " with faith, and with well-begotten wealth, becomes imperishable | 475 |
| " —One should not tell a lie, after performing | 485 |
| Sages —have expectations from family-men | 105 |
| " —to be worshipped by Vedic study | 105 |
| " —the term may stand for the Vedas | 105 |
| Salt —non-alkaline—is 'sacrificial food' | 274 |
| Sambhojanî —a convivial dinner—the 'gift of devils' | 164 |
| Sâmagâna —name given to the singing of Sâma verses | 168 |
| Sâmaveda —related to Pitrs | 406 |
| " —Sound of—impure | 406 |
| Samâptika —the name to be applied to one who has learnt the 'three thousands,' i.e., the whole Sâmaveda | 167 |
| ' Sampannam '—syllable to be performed at <i>Âbhyudayaika Rite</i> ... | 272 |
| Sanctifier of Company | 201-205 |
| " —purifies the company defiled by the presence of men unworthy of company | 201 |
| " —to be always sought for | 201 |
| " —defined | 201 |
| " —one who is foremost in Vedic lore and Sciences | 201 |
| " —one who is born in a family of men learned in the Veda | 201 |
| " —one who has learnt the ' <i>Triṇâchiketa</i> ' | 208 |
| " — " " knows the science of Five Fires | 208 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|---------|
| Sanctifier of Company—one who has learnt the 'Trisūparṇa' | 203 |
| " " — " " knows the six-limbed science | 203 |
| " " — " " is born of a woman married in the Brāhma form... | 203 |
| " " — " " sings the <i>Jyeṣṭha-Sāmas</i> ... | 203 |
| " " —Vedic learning, essential characteristics of a—others, additional qualifications ... | 203 |
| " " —is one who understands the meaning of the Veda ... | 204 |
| " " —is one who expounds the Veda and its meaning ... | 204 |
| " " —The Student is a ... | 204 |
| " " — " giver of a thousand is... | 204 |
| " " — " Centenarian is a ... | 204 |
| Sanctificatory texts—essential for sacrificers ... | 274 |
| Sapindikarāṇa—Amalgaming Rite—time for division, after Father's death ... | 284 |
| " —Shrāddha in honor of one just dead, to be offered up to ... | 258 |
| " —to be performed at the end of a year ... | 259 |
| " —Shrāddha to three ancestors, not to be offered until ... | 259-260 |
| " —After—offerings to be made to the three ancestors ... | 260 |
| " —to be performed, preceded by offering to the gods ... | 260 |
| " —Food to be offered to Pitr̥s, at ... | 260 |
| " — " " " person just dead ... | 260 |
| " —Mantra—addressed to the person recently dead ... | 265 |
| " —Details of—discussed ... | 264-269 |
| " —only partially binding, in the case of death of Father, if grandfather living ... | 268 |
| " —If grandfather alive, the Father's ball to be united to those of higher ancestors, at ... | 269 |
| Satyabhāma ... | 133 |
| Satyakāma Jābāla ... | 18 |
| Satyakāma ... | 178 |
| Seat—to be offered to guest ... | 121 |
| Season—of women—the even days conducive to conceiving of male child ... | 80 |
| " —of women—the uneven days conducive to conceiving of female child ... | 80 |
| " —of women—defined ... | 71, 79 |
| " — " — indicates capacity for conception ... | 71 |
| " — " —comprises the first sixteen days of the course ... | 79 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Śhrāddha —By feeding R̥gvēdi, or Yajurvedi, or Sāmavedi at— one brings ever-lasting satisfaction to his ancestors | 168 |
| “ —to be performed on a Moonless day | 169 |
| “ —Persons fed at—should be learned | 169 |
| “ — “ “ — “ of right behaviour ... | 169 |
| “ — “ “ — “ “ well-known family ... | 169 |
| “ — “ “ — “ son of a learned father ... | 169 |
| “ — “ “ — “ not be related to the performer | 169 |
| “ —Maternal grandfather, may be fed at | 170 |
| “ — “ uncle, “ “ | 170 |
| “ —Sister's son, “ “ | 170 |
| “ —Father-in-law, “ “ | 170 |
| “ —Teacher, “ “ | 170 |
| “ —Daughter's son, “ “ | 170 |
| “ —Son-in-law, “ “ | 170 |
| “ —A relative, “ “ | 170 |
| “ —Priest, “ “ | 170 |
| “ —The person, at whose sacrifice the performer officiates—may be fed at | 170 |
| “ —Brāhmanas to be carefully examined at | 170 |
| “ —Thieves undeserving of gifts at | 171 |
| “ —Eunuchs “ “ “ | 171 |
| “ —Atheists “ “ “ | 171 |
| “ —Outcasts “ “ “ | 171 |
| “ —One with braided hair, not to be fed at | 172 |
| “ —Ignorant man, “ “ | 172 |
| “ —Hairless “ “ “ | 172 |
| “ —Gambler, “ “ “ | 172 |
| “ —Those who sacrifice for hosts, not to be fed at | 172 |
| “ —The Student, “ “ | 172 |
| “ —Red-haired man, “ “ | 172 |
| “ — <i>Durvāla</i> , not to be fed at | 172 |
| “ —One who officiates at <i>Vratyaṣṭoma</i> , should not be fed at | 172 |
| “ —Healers, to be avoided at | 174 |
| “ —Temple-attendants, to be avoided at | 174 |
| “ —Meat-sellers “ “ | 174 |
| “ —Traders “ “ | 174 |
| “ —Village-servant “ “ | 174 |
| “ —Servant of King “ “ | 174 |
| “ —One with deformed nails, to be avoided at | 174 |
| “ — “ black teeth “ “ | 174 |
| “ —Opposer of superior “ “ | 174 |
| “ —Forsaker of Fire “ “ | 174 |
| “ —Urserer “ “ | 174 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Shrāddha</i> —Invalids, to be avoided at | 175 |
| " —Cattle-tender, " " " " " " | 175 |
| " —Superseder of Elder Brother, to be avoided at ... | 175 |
| " —Neglector of Great Sacrifices, " " " " | 175 |
| " —One inimical to Brāhmaṇas, " " " " | 175 |
| " — " superseded by younger brother, " " " " | 175 |
| " —Member of a Company, " " " " | 175 |
| " —Actor, " " " " | 177 |
| " —One who has broken the vows of continence, to be avoided at | 177 |
| " —Husband of a Shūdra woman, to be avoided at ... | 177 |
| " —Son of remarried woman, " " " " | 177 |
| " —A one-eyed man, " " " " | 177 |
| " —One who admits his wife's paramour, " " " " | 177 |
| " —Paid Teacher, " " " " | 178 |
| " —Pupil of a paid Teacher, " " " " | 178 |
| " —Teacher of Shūdra, " " " " | 178 |
| " —Pupil " " " " " " " " | 178 |
| " —One of reprehensible speech, " " " " | 178 |
| " —Son of an adúlteress, " " " " | 178 |
| " — " a widow, " " " " | 178 |
| " —Forsaker of his Mother, " " " " | 179 |
| " — " " Father, " " " " | 179 |
| " — " " Superior, " " " " | 179 |
| " —One connected with outcasts— " " " " | 179 |
| " —House-burner, " " " " | 181 |
| " —Prisoner, " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " —Eater of food of an adúlteress' son, to be avoided at... | 181 |
| " —Soma-seller, to be avoided at | 181 |
| " —Sea-voyager, " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " —Bard, " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " —Oil-dealer, " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " —Perjuror, " " " " " " " " | 181 |
| " —One who sells his sacrificial merit, to be avoided at .. | 181 |
| " — " " quarrels with his Father, to be avoided at | 182 |
| " —Keeper of a gambling-house, " " " " | 182 |
| " —The Drunkard, " " " " | 182 |
| " —One afflicted with foul disease, " " " " | 182 |
| " — " accused of sins, " " " " | 182 |
| " —The Hypocrite, " " " " | 182 |
| " —Dealer in Essence, " " " " | 182 |
| " —Maker of bows and arrows, " " " " | 183 |
| " —One whose wife dallies with another person, to be avoided at, | 183 |
| " — " who makes love to Brother's widow, to be avoided at | 183 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|---------|
| <i>Shrāddha</i> —One who injures a friend, should be avoided at ... | 183 |
| “ — “ “ subsists by gambling, “ “ ... | 183 |
| “ — “ “ is taught by one's own son, should be avoided at ... | 183 |
| “ —An Epileptic, should be avoided at ... | 185 |
| “ —One with scrofulous swellings, should be avoided at ... | 185 |
| “ — “ suffering from Leucoderma, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ —The Backbiter, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ — “ Lunatic, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ — “ Blind man, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ — “ derider of the Veda, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ — “ tamer of Elephants, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ — “ “ “ Bulls, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ — “ “ “ Horses, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ — “ “ “ Camels, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ —One who subsists on stars, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ —Bird-keeper, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ —Teacher of Warfare, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ —One who lives by Astrology, “ “ ... | 185 |
| “ —Diverter of water-courses, “ “ ... | 186 |
| “ —House-planner, “ “ ... | 186 |
| “ —Messenger, “ “ ... | 186 |
| “ —Tree-planter, “ “ ... | 186 |
| “ —Sporter with dogs, “ “ ... | 186 |
| “ —The Falconer, “ “ ... | 186 |
| “ — “ defiler of virgins, “ “ ... | 186 |
| “ — “ cruel man, “ “ ... | 186 |
| “ —He who subsists on Shūdra, “ “ ... | 186 |
| “ — “ who sacrifices to the <i>Gaṇas</i> , to be avoided at ... | 186 |
| “ —One devoid of Right Conduct, ... | 187 |
| “ —Man without vigour, “ “ ... | 187 |
| “ —The constant boggar, “ “ ... | 187 |
| “ —He who lives by Agriculture, “ “ ... | 187 |
| “ —One suffering from Elephantiasis, “ “ ... | 187 |
| “ — “ who is ill spoken of, by good men, “ “ ... | 187 |
| “ —The sheep-dealer, “ “ ... | 188 |
| “ — “ buffalo-keeper, “ “ ... | 188 |
| “ — “ husband of a previously married woman, to be avoided at ... | 188 |
| “ ... “ carrier of the dead, to be avoided at ... | 188 |
| “ —nullified by sons of other men's wives ... | 196 |
| “ —Method of Invitation to ... | 206-210 |
| “ —At the approach of—three qualified Brāhmaṇas to be invited on the preceding day or the next day... | 206 |
| “ —The Brāhmaṇa invited to—shall remain self-controlled | 207 |
| “ — “ “ “ — “ not recite Veda ... | 207 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| <i>Shrāddha</i> —the Brāhmaṇa invited to—shall keep all Observances and Restraints of the ' <i>Snātaka</i> ' ... | 207 |
| „ —Performer of—shall remain self-controlled ... | 207 |
| „ — „ — „ not recite Veda ... | 207 |
| „ — „ — „ keep all Observances and Restraints of the ' <i>Snātaka</i> ' ... | 207 |
| „ —One neglecting invitation to—incurs sin ... | 208 |
| „ —Invited to—if one dallies with a woman, one imbibes the sin of the performer ... | 209 |
| „ —Vessels to be used at ... | 221 |
| „ — „ of silver—to be used at—bring imperishability ... | 221 |
| „ —excels Sacrifices ... | 223 |
| „ —sustained by „ ... | 223 |
| „ —protected by Brāhmaṇa, engaged in honor of gods ... | 223 |
| „ —taken away by Rākṣasas—if not protected ... | 223 |
| „ —to begin and end with an offering to gods ... | 224 |
| „ —should never „ „ „ „ Pitṛs ... | 224 |
| „ —Method of feeding Brāhmaṇas at ... | 227 |
| „ —Place for—should be clean ... | 227 |
| „ — „ — „ secluded ... | 227 |
| „ — „ — „ sloping southwards ... | 227 |
| „ — „ — „ smeared with cowdung ... | 227 |
| „ —Brāhmaṇa at—to be seated, after ablutions, on kusha-seat ... | 228 |
| „ —Brāhmaṇas at—to be worshiped—with perfume and garlands ... | 228 |
| „ —Water, sesamum and kusha-blade to be presented to Brāhmaṇas, at ... | 229 |
| „ —An offering to be made into Fire, when permitted by Brāhmaṇas, at ... | 229 |
| „ —Sacrificial food to be first offered to Agni and Soma-Yama, at ... | 230 |
| „ —In the absence of Fire, offerings to be made into the hands of Brāhmaṇas, at ... | 231 |
| „ —Brāhmaṇa is the Fire, at ... | 231 |
| „ —may be performed, whenever one comes across a ' Sanctifier of Company,' on a journey ... | 231 |
| „ —may be performed, whenever one comes across specially commended materials ... | 231 |
| „ —may be performed, even when one is away from home and Fire ... | 232 |
| „ —Brāhmaṇas described as the ' gods ' of ... | 235 |
| „ — „ „ „ free from anger ... | 235 |
| „ — „ „ „ easily satisfied ... | 235 |
| „ — „ „ „ intent upon sustaining the Universe ... | 235 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Shrāddha</i> —offering into Agni, in 'apasavya' form | 236 |
| „ —Balls for offerings to Pitrs at—to be made out of remnants of materials offered to gods—in Fire | 237 |
| „ —Balls to be offered in the 'apasavya' form, at | 237 |
| „ — „ „ facing South, at | 235 |
| „ — „ „ on kusha-blades, at | 238 |
| „ —Hand to be wiped „ „ „ | 238 |
| „ — „ „ for the sake of 'Partakers of Smear- ings, at | 238 |
| „ —Six Seasons, to be saluted at | 239 |
| „ —Pitrs, „ „ with mantras, at | 239 |
| „ — <i>Gāyatrī</i> with 'Shiras'—to be repeated at | 240 |
| „ —Remnant of water, to be poured near the Balls, offered at | 240 |
| „ —Balls offered at—to be smelt | 240 |
| „ —Small portions to be taken out of Balls, offered at | 241 |
| „ —Brāhmanas to be fed with small portions of Balls, offered at | 241 |
| „ —to be offered to previous ancestors, if Father living | 241 |
| „ —Father to be fed as a Brāhmana, at | 241 |
| „ —to childless uncle, necessary | 242 |
| „ —Balls to be offered to Grandfather and Great-grand- father, if Father living | 244 |
| „ —No—by one whose Father is living | 244 |
| „ —to be offered to Father and Great-grand-father, if Grandfather is living and Father dead | 244 |
| „ —Grandfather may be fed at | 244 |
| „ —Water and Sesamum to be poured into the hands of Brāhmanas, at | 245 |
| „ —Top portions of Balls to be offered to Brāhmanas, at | 245 |
| „ —At—Food to be placed before Brāhmanas | 245 |
| „ —At— „ „ served with both hands | 246 |
| „ —Tears never to be shed, at | 247 |
| „ —Anger to be avoided, at | 247 |
| „ —Untruth „ „ „ | 247 |
| „ —Food not to be shaken, at | 247 |
| „ —At—Food not to be touched with foot | 247 |
| „ —Tears shed at—transfer the food to ghosts | 248 |
| „ —Anger at—transfers the food to enemies | 248 |
| „ —Untruth at— „ „ „ dogs | 248 |
| „ —Touching of food with feet, at—transfers it to de- mons | 248 |
| „ —Shaking of food at—transfers it to sinners | 248 |
| „ —At—what is agreeable to Brāhmanas, should be given ungrudgingly | 249 |
| „ —Vedic stories, to be related at | 249 |
| „ —Vedic Texts, to be recited at | 249 |
| „ —Legal Institutes „ „ „ | 249 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| <i>Shrāddha</i> —Stories, to be recited at | 249 |
| " —Historics, " " " | 249 |
| " —Legends, " " " | 249 |
| " —Supplementary Texts, to be recited at | 249 |
| " —Offerer of—should be happy | 250 |
| " —" —" make the invited Brāhmaṇas happy | 250 |
| " —" —shall feed Brāhmaṇas gently... .. | 250 |
| " —" —" urge " to eat more | 250 |
| " —At—Daughter's son to be fed with special care | 250 |
| " —" —Blanket to be offered as seat | 250 |
| " —" —Sesamum to be scattered on the ground | 250 |
| " —Daughter's son, specially sacred at | 251 |
| " —Blanket, " " " | 251 |
| " —Sesamum, " " " | 251 |
| " —Cleanliness, specially commended at | 251 |
| " —Absence of anger, " " " | 251 |
| " —" " haste, " " " | 251 |
| " —Food offered at—should be hot | 251 |
| " —Brāhmaṇas should eat at—with controlled speech | 251 |
| " —At—Invitees should not describe the qualities of food | 251 |
| " —" —" " eat with head covered | 258 |
| " —" —" " " " face towards the South | 253 |
| " —" —" " " " shoes on | 253 |
| " —" —the Chāṇḍāla should not see the feeding of guests | 251 |
| " —" —" Pig " " " " " | 254 |
| " —" —" Cock " " " " " | 254 |
| " —" —" Dog " " " " " | 254 |
| " —" —" Unclean woman " " " " " | 254 |
| " —" —" Eunuch " " " " " | 254 |
| " —defiled by the look of the Chāṇḍāla | 254 |
| " —" " " " Pig | 254 |
| " —" " " " Cock | 254 |
| " —" " " " Dog | 254 |
| " —" " " " Unclean woman | 254 |
| " —" " " " Eunuch | 254 |
| " —The cripple to be kept away from | 256 |
| " —" one-eyed man " " " | 256 |
| " —" limb-less " " " " | 256 |
| " —" man, with redundant limb, to be kept away from | 256 |
| " —stray Brāhmaṇa seeking for food, to be fed at | 256 |
| " —Mendicant " " " | 256 |
| " —After Brāhmaṇas have eaten at—all kinds of food to be mixed up with water and scattered on the ground, before them | 257 |

| | |
|--|---------|
| <i>Shrāddha</i> —Remnant of food, and what is scattered on Kusha grass, at—form the share of those who have died without sacraments | 257 |
| „ —Remnant of food, and what is scattered on Kusha grass, at—form the share of those who have abandoned family ladies | 257 |
| „ —Remnant of food fallen at—is the share of dutiful servants | 258 |
| „ —in honor of one just dead—to be offered up to the <i>Sapindikarāṇa</i> rite | 258 |
| „ —in honor of one just dead—feeding of Brāhmaṇas—without any rites in honour of gods | 258 |
| „ —in honour of one just dead—one Ball to be offered... | 258 |
| „ —The first—in honour of the recent dead—to be offered on the Eleventh day | 259 |
| „ —on the date of death, every month, till one year | 259 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ year | 259 |
| „ —in honour of one person—called ' <i>Ekoddiṣṭa</i> ' | 259 |
| „ —to three ancestors—not to be offered until the <i>Sapindikarāṇa</i> | 259 |
| „ — <i>Pārvaṇa</i> —to be offered after the <i>Sapindikarāṇa</i> | 260 |
| „ — <i>Sapindikarāṇa</i> —to be offered | 260 |
| „ —At „ —food „ „ to Pitrs | 260 |
| „ — „ — „ „ „ the Recent Dead | 260 |
| „ — <i>Ekoddiṣṭa</i> —First—to be performed on the Eleventh day for the Brāhmaṇas | 263-264 |
| „ — „ — „ —to be performed on the Thirteenth day for the Kṣattriya | 263-264 |
| „ — <i>Pārvaṇa</i> —the archetype of all <i>Shrāddhas</i> | 264 |
| „ —Monthly—has the <i>Āmavasyā</i> <i>Shrāddhs</i> for its archetype | 264-265 |
| „ — „ —does not borrow details from <i>Sapindikarāṇa</i> | 265 |
| „ —After eating at—the leavings should not be given to Shūdra | 270 |
| „ —After eating at—one should not enter the bed of a woman | 270 |
| „ —After eating at—full continence to be observed | 270 |
| „ —Invitees to—after dinner—should be asked, 'Have you dined well?' | 271 |
| „ —Invitees to—should be made to wash | 271 |
| „ — „ — „ — „ addressed, 'Please rest where you choose' | 271 |
| „ —Brāhmaṇas fed at—should say, 'May there be <i>svadhā</i> ' | 272 |
| „ —At all—the syllable ' <i>svadhā</i> ' constitutes the highest benediction | 272 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Shrāddha</i> —Offering of Meat of Sheep at—brings satisfaction to ancestors for four months ... | 283 |
| " — " " " " Birds at—brings satisfaction to ancestors for five months ... | 283 |
| " — " " " " Goat at—brings satisfaction to ancestors for six months ... | 284 |
| " — " " " " Spotted Deer at—brings satisfac- tion to ancestors for seven months | 284 |
| " — " " " " Black antelope at—brings satisfac- tion to ancestors for eight months | 284 |
| " — " " " " <i>Ruru</i> Deer at—brings satisfaction to ancestors for nine months ... | 284 |
| " — " " " " Boars at—brings satisfaction to ancestors for ten months ... | 284 |
| " — " " " " Buffaloes—brings satisfaction to ancestors for ten months ... | 284 |
| " — " " " " Hare at—brings satisfaction to ancestors for eleven months ... | 284 |
| " — " " " " Tortoise at—brings satisfaction to ancestors for eleven months... | 284 |
| " — " Cow's milk—brings satisfaction to ancestors for one year | 284 |
| " — " Milk preparations at—brings satisfaction to ancestors for one year | 284 |
| " — " Meat of old Goat—brings satisfaction to an- cestors for twelve years | 284 |
| " — " <i>Kālashāka</i> —brings satisfaction to ancestors for endless time | 285 |
| " — " Meat of Porcupine—brings satisfaction to ancestors for endless time ... | 285 |
| " — " " " Rhinoceros—brings satisfaction to ancestors for endless time ... | 285 |
| " — " " " Red Goat—brings satisfaction to an- cestors for endless time ... | 285 |
| " — " Honey—brings satisfaction to ancestors for endless time | 285 |
| " — " 'Hermit's Food'—brings satisfaction to an- cestors for endless time | 285 |
| " — " anything mixed with Honey—during the rains—on the 13th day of the month—in the asterism of <i>Maghi</i> , at—is imperishable | 286 |
| " — " milk-rice, mixed with butter and Honey—on the 13th day of the month—when the 'Ele- phant's shadow' falls towards the East, at | 286 |
| " —All offerings at—made with faith and in right manner —is inexhaustible | 287 |
| " —Time for | 288 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Shrāddha</i> —Dark Fortnight, commended for | 288 |
| „ —All days beginning with the Tenth—excepting the fourteenth—commended for | 288 |
| „ —Performance of—on even dates and even asterisms—brings all desires | 288 |
| „ —Performance of—on odd days and odd asterisms—brings prosperous offspring | 288 |
| „ —Latter half of the month preferable to the former half, for | 288 |
| „ —Dark fortnight preferable to the Bright, for | 289 |
| „ —Afternoon preferable to forenoon, for | 289 |
| „ —to be performed till death | 289 |
| „ — „ „ with the sacred thread passing over the right shoulder | 289 |
| „ —Offerings at—to be made 'from off the left' to the right | 289 |
| „ —(Offerings at—to be made with Kusha in hand | 289 |
| „ —not to be performed at night | 290 |
| „ — „ „ „ the two Twilights | 290 |
| „ — „ „ „ when the sun just risen | 290 |
| „ —to be offered thrice in the year | 291 |
| „ — „ during Summer | 291 |
| „ — „ „ Winter | 291 |
| „ — „ „ Rains | 291 |
| „ —which forms part of the 'Five Sacrifices,' to be performed every day | 291 |
| „ —thrice in the year—meant for one who has set up the Fire—according to some | 291 |
| „ —No—for the Brāhmaṇa, who has set up the Fire—apart from that on the Moonless Day | 292 |
| „ —Oblation into Fire—in connection with—not to be offered into the Common Fire | 292 |
| „ —Rewards for offering | 294 |
| „ —Daily water-offering, an optional alternative to the daily | 294 |
| <i>Shrauta</i> rites—in the sacrificial fire | 89 |
| <i>Shabara</i> -bhāṣya—quoted | 3 |
| ' <i>Shrotriya</i> '—name applicable also to one who knows only a part of the Veda | 166 |
| „ —Offering to be given to | 166 |
| <i>Shri-sūkta</i> —to be recited at <i>Shrāddha</i> | 249 |
| <i>Shri</i> —Offering to—at the Head | 1-2 |
| <i>Shūdra</i> -girl—may or may not be married by a Brāhmaṇa | 38 |
| „ „ „ „ „ Kṛattriya | 38 |
| „ —Āsura, Gāndharva and Paishācha forms of marriage—lawful for | 46 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Shūdra</i> -girl—marrying in higher caste— to take hold of the hem of garment | 70 |
| ' <i>Shulka</i> '—for marriage—defined | 83 |
| " — " — —deprecatd | 83 |
| <i>Shūdra</i> —not a guest in <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> 's house | 130 |
| " —arriving as guest, should be fed with servants .. | 131 |
| " —pronounces ' <i>namah</i> ,' instead of <i>mantras</i> | 145 |
| " —also should not feed friends at <i>Shrāddhas</i> | 163 |
| " — <i>Sukālins</i> , the <i>Pitrs</i> of | 217 |
| " —must marry <i>Shūdra</i> girl | 37 |
| " —Uncooked food, may be accepted from submissive ... | 341 |
| " —Advice not to be given to | 372 |
| " — " to be given to the—dependent upon oneself .. | 378 |
| " —not entitled to the study of the Subsidiary Sciences ... | 379 |
| " —Law not to be expounded to | 380 |
| " —Penance not to be indicated to | 380 |
| " —Raw grains may be accepted from | 473 |
| <i>Shvêtkêtu</i> | 164 |
| Sick persons—to be fed immediately after guests | 133 |
| ' <i>Signs</i> '—stand for complexion, lines on the body, etc. ... | 21 |
| Sister's son—may be fed at <i>Shrāddha</i> | 102 |
| Slaves—are one's own shadow | 444 |
| Slaughter-houses—five—for the Householder | 90 |
| ' <i>Snāna</i> '—the name really applies only to the Final Bath ... | 12 |
| " —can apply to ending of Observances also... .. | 12 |
| <i>Smṛtu Homa</i> | 109 |
| " —rites in Marriage-fire | 89 |
| <i>Snātaka</i> —Making of gifts to guests, the duty of | 101 |
| <i>Soma</i> —daily offering to | 109 |
| " —called ' <i>Anagnidagdhu</i> ' | 218 |
| <i>Soma</i> -herb —is 'sacrificial food' | 275 |
| <i>Somayāga</i> | 142 |
| <i>Soma</i> -seller—What is given to—becomes ordure | 199 |
| <i>Somapa Pitrs</i> —worshipped by <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> | 211 |
| " —name used in offerings—by people who are ignorant of the names of their forefathers ... | 215 |
| " — <i>Pitrs</i> of <i>Brāhmaṇas</i> | 217 |
| " —sons of <i>Kavi</i> | 218 |
| <i>Somasads</i> —sons of <i>Virāj</i> | 216 |
| " —are <i>Pitrs</i> of <i>Sādhyas</i> | 216 |
| <i>Somapas</i> —sons of <i>Kavi</i> | 218 |
| <i>Soma-Yama</i> —First offering at <i>Shrāddha</i> , to be made to ... | 230 |
| ' <i>Soma</i> -sacrifices'—to be offered at the end of year ... | 330 |
| Sons—born of other man's wives—are of two kinds ... | 195 |
| Son— " " " —during husband's life-time— called ' <i>Kuṇḍa</i> ' ... | 195 |
| " — " " —after husband's death—called ' <i>Golaku</i> ' ... | 195 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|----------|
| Son—of 'appointed' woman | 195 |
| „ —born of other men's wives, make all offerings futile ... | 196 |
| „ —to be corrected with the rod | 431 |
| „ —born of Brāhma marriage is glorious | 66 |
| „ — „ Brāhma, Daiva, Ārṣa and Prājāpatya marriages, is endowed with Brahmic glory | 67 |
| „ —Qualities of—born of Brāhma, Daiva, Ārṣa and Prājāpatya marriage | 68 |
| „ —Quality of—born of inferior marriages | 67 |
| „ —is one's own body | 444 |
| Son-in-law—to be received with Honey-Mixture | 138 |
| „ —may be fed at Shrad̥dha | 170 |
| Soups—to be served on the ground | 246 |
| Speech—to be in keeping with age | 319 |
| „ — „ „ „ occupation | 319 |
| „ — „ „ „ wealth | 319 |
| „ — „ „ „ learning | 319 |
| „ — „ „ „ family | 319 |
| „ —offered into Life-breath | 324 |
| „ —The Imperishable sacrifice, rests in | 324 |
| „ —Control of | 497 |
| „ —All things are regulated by | 497 |
| „ — „ „ have their root in | 497 |
| „ — „ „ emanate from | 497 |
| „ —Stealer of—is stealer of all things | 497 |
| Spiritual Merit—the only companion in the other world ... | 486 |
| „ —alone follows Man, after death | 487 |
| „ —should be slowly accumulated | 485, 488 |
| „ —as companion—carries man through unfordable darkness | 488 |
| „ —carries man to higher regions | 488 |
| Stories—to be related at Shrad̥dha | 249 |
| „ — „ „ „ liked by Pitṛs | 249 |
| „ —of Suparṇa Mitrāvaruṇa, etc. | 172 |
| Student—not to be fed at Shrad̥dha | 172 |
| „ —Life-long—serves Teacher till body dissolves | 1 |
| „ —Religious—of two kinds | 1 |
| „ —after finishing the Veda—to be honoured by his father with a cow | 16 |
| „ —not to be treated as guest | 338 |
| Studentship—Period of | 16 |
| „ —Vows of—in the sense of not having intercourse with women | 14 |
| „ —Vows of—some to be abandoned on finishing Veda, and some to be continued till Subsidiary Sciences have been studied | 15 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Study of Veda—the predominant factor | 3-4 |
| „ —motive discussed | 3-11 |
| „ Subsidiary Sciences, should follow that of the Veda | 15 |
| „ —What is contained in the Veda, to begin after that of verbal text | 15 |
| Subsidiary Sciences—During the study of—the only vow to be kept up, is the avoidance of inter- course with women | 15 |
| „ —to be studied throughout Dark Fortnights | 300 |
| „ —are Phonetics, Grammar, Rituals, etc. ... | 301 |
| Subsistence—Means of | 300 |
| „ „ —adopted, must be such as involve least trouble to living beings | 300 |
| „ —For bare—one should accumulate wealth, by means of one's irreproachable occupations—without causing trouble to the body | 301 |
| „ —by 'Truth'—commended | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Nectar'— „ | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Death'— „ | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Super-death' „ | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Truth and falsehood'—commended | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Living of the dog'—prohibited | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Death'—deprecatd | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Super-death'—deprecatd | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Truth and Falsehood'—less deprecatd | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Truth'—consists of living on what is got by Gleaning and Picking | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Nectar'—consists in living on what is attained unasked | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Death'—consists in living on alms obtained by begging | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Super-death'—consists in living by culti- vation | 302 |
| „ —„ 'Truth and Falsehood'—is living by Trade | 305 |
| „ —„ 'Service'—is the 'living of dogs' | 305 |
| Sukādins—the Pitr̥s of Shūdras | 217 |
| „ —are those who complete the Sacrifice | 217 |
| „ —„ the sons of Vashistha | 218 |
| Sun—rain proceeds from | 100 |
| 'Supersession of Elder Brother'—Exceptions to | 191 |
| Superseder „ Elder Brother—defined... .. | 191 |
| „ „ „ „ —to be avoided at Shrāddha and Sacrifice | 175 |
| „ —also the son, taking the Fires before his Father | 192 |
| Superseded Elder Brother—described | 191 |
| „ „ „ —goes to hell | 193 |
| Superseding younger brother—goes to hell | 193 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|----------|
| <i>Suparṇa</i> --Story of-- to be related at <i>Shrāddha</i> ... | 192 |
| ' <i>Sushṛtam</i> '--syllable to be pronounced at the <i>Goṣṭha</i> ... | 272 |
| ' <i>Svadhū</i> '--the syllable--constitutes the highest benediction at <i>Shrāddha</i> ... | 272 |
| ' <i>Svaditam</i> '--syllable to be pronounced by person at <i>Shrāddha</i> ... | 272 |
| ' <i>Svāhā</i> ' ... | 144 |
| ' <i>Svādhyāya</i> ' ... | 106 |
| ' <i>Svādhyāyo dhyātavyah</i> ' ... | 106 |
| ' <i>Sviṣṭakṛt</i> ' ... | 7, 8, 94 |
| " --Daily offering to ... | 109 |
| " --a qualification of Agni ... | 109 |

T

| | |
|--|-----|
| <i>Tāṇḍava</i> --name given to <i>Sāma</i> Veda texts relating to Dancing... | 168 |
| <i>Tantravārtika</i> --quoted ... | 75 |
| <i>Tapasvādhyaṇiṣṭha</i> --Religious Student ... | 159 |
| <i>Tapotiṣṭha</i> --Recluse... .. | 159 |
| <i>Tarpana</i> --is offering to <i>Pitṛs</i> ... | 93 |
| " --compulsory ... | 95 |
| Teacher--not to be treated as guest ... | 130 |
| " --to be received with Honey-Mixture ... | 138 |
| " --may be fed at <i>Shrāddha</i> ... | 170 |
| " --is the Lord of the world of <i>Brahmā</i> ... | 444 |
| Teaching of child--Father's duty ... | 14 |
| " --consists of explaining to him what he should and should not do ... | 14 |
| " --is the offering to <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> ... | 93 |
| Temple-attendants--to be avoided at <i>Shrāddhas</i> and <i>Sacrifices</i> ... | 174 |
| " --Gift to--becomes lost ... | 199 |
| Thieves--undeserving of gifts at <i>Shrāddha</i> and <i>Sacrifice</i> ... | 171 |
| Thoughts--to be in keeping with Age ... | 319 |
| " -- " " " Occupation ... | 319 |
| " -- " " " Wealth ... | 319 |
| " -- " " " Learning ... | 319 |
| " -- " " " Family ... | 319 |
| Time--for <i>Shrāddha</i> ... | 288 |
| Trade--is both 'true and false' ... | 305 |
| " and Agriculture--deprecated for the <i>Brāhmaṇa</i> ... | 309 |
| Traders--to be avoided at <i>Shrāddha</i> and <i>Sacrifice</i> ... | 174 |
| " --Gift to--is neither here nor there ... | 199 |
| ' <i>Triṇāchikēta</i> '--name of a part of <i>Yajurveda</i> ... | 203 |
| ' <i>Trisuparṇa</i> '-- " " mantra in <i>Taittiriya Veda</i> ... | 304 |
| Truthfulness--to be delighted in ... | 438 |
| Twice-born person--shall take a wife, of the same caste, who is 'endowed with signs' ... | 19 |
| " --becomes an outcast, by marrying a <i>Shūdra</i> girl ... | 40 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| <i>Upā karma</i> —Vedic study to be omitted for three days, at ... | 403 |
| <i>Upāmshu</i> | 94 |
| <i>Upaniṣads</i> —The Science of the Five Fires, explained in ... | 123 |
| Urine—not to be passed on road or ashes, etc. ... | 352 |
| „ —to be passed at a distance from dwelling-house ... | 426 |
| <i>Ushanas</i> —Works of—to be studied by the Accomplished Student | 320 |
| Userer—to be avoided at Sacrifices and Shrāddhas ... | 174 |
| „ —is one who lives upon interest, even when other means are available | 174 |
| „ —sometimes used in the sense of one who accumulates gain by interest | 174 |
| „ —Gift to—has no place | 199 |
| „ —Food given by—to be avoided | 463 |
| ' <i>Utsarjana</i> '—(suspension) of the Vedas—on the first day of Bright half of Māgha | 389 |
| „ —To desist from Vedic study, for the night after ... | 390 |
| „ —Vedic study to be omitted for three days at ... | 403 |

V

| | |
|---|-----|
| <i>Vaiśeṣikas</i> | 181 |
| <i>Vaishvadeva</i> offering—Guest arriving after—should have food cooked for him | 128 |
| „ offerings—made in the ordinary fire also ... | 123 |
| „ oblation | 281 |
| „ Sacrifice | 98 |
| „ <i>Homa</i> | 95 |
| „ „ —in ordinary fire also | 96 |
| <i>Vaishvadeva</i> -offerings—not obligatory for Brāhmaṇa living on Gleanings and Pickings | 312 |
| <i>Vaishvadeva</i> rite—by the wife—without <i>mantras</i> | 143 |
| <i>Vaishya</i> — <i>Āsura</i> , <i>Gāndharva</i> and <i>Paishāchu</i> forms of marriage— lawful for | 46 |
| „ — <i>Prājāpatya</i> form of marriage—the best for ... | 49 |
| „ girl—marrying into higher caste—should take hold of the goad | 70 |
| „ —not a guest in Brāhmaṇa's house | 130 |
| „ —arriving as guest—should be fed with servants ... | 131 |
| „ — <i>Ājyapa</i> s—the Pits of | 217 |
| „ —No diversity of <i>Gotra</i> and <i>Pravara</i> among ... | 25 |
| „ — <i>Gotra</i> of—determined by that of Priest ... | 25 |
| „ —must marry a <i>Vaishya</i> girl | 35 |
| „ —may „ „ <i>Shūdra</i> „ | 37 |
| <i>Vaishvānara</i> -sacrifice—Principle of the | 437 |

| | PAGE. |
|---|----------|
| <i>Vājasaneyi Samhitā</i> | 240 |
| <i>Vanaspathis</i> —offering to—on the Pestle and Mortar ... | 111 |
| <i>Vāntāshin</i> | 180 |
| <i>Vārdhrīṇasa</i> —described | 284 |
| <i>Vasu</i> —the name given to Father | 284 |
| <i>Vaśiṣṭha</i> — <i>agotra</i> | 24 |
| “ — <i>Dharmashāṣṭra</i> , referred to | 2 |
| “ —quoted | 32 |
| “ —father of <i>Sukālin</i> Pitr̥s | 218 |
| “ —referred to | 80 |
| “ —quoted | 138, 846 |
| “ — “ | 192 |
| <i>Vāstospati</i> —Offering to—at the centre of the Homestead ... | 112 |
| <i>Veda</i> —one, two or three, to be learnt | 13 |
| “ —not to be recited, while riding a horse | 403 |
| “ — “ “ on a tree | 403 |
| “ — “ “ riding an elephant | 403 |
| “ —used in the sense of Rescensional Text | 13 |
| “ —not to be recited, while riding a camel | 403 |
| “ — “ “ seated on barren ground | 403 |
| “ —Text of—should be studied in the same order in which one's forefathers have studied it | 16 |
| “ —not to be recited on a conveyance | 403 |
| “ —One accomplished in—to be honoured as guest | 337 |
| “ —Essence of three—to be recited first | 407 |
| “ —a name for ‘Kusha-handful’ | 346 |
| “ —to be studied throughout Bright Fortnights | 390 |
| “ — “ recited not indistinctly | 391 |
| “ — “ “ not in the proximity of <i>Shûdras</i> | 391 |
| “ — “ “ daily, in normal times | 391 |
| “ —Cavilling at—to be avoided | 431 |
| “ — <i>Rik</i> or <i>Yajus</i> —not to be recited during <i>Sâma</i> -chant ... | 405 |
| “ — “ “ “ after reading the <i>Âraṇyaka</i> | 405 |
| <i>Vedic scholar</i> —to be honoured as guest | 337 |
| <i>Vedic study</i> —is a ‘sacrifice’ | 94 |
| “ —daily—is compulsory | 95 |
| “ —One should be constantly engaged in | 99 |
| “ —the means of worshipping <i>Sages</i> | 105 |
| “ —to be kept up by Accomplished Student | 389 |
| “ — “ carried on for four months and a half, after <i>Upâkarma</i> | 389 |
| “ —Days unfit for | 393 |
| “ —to be omitted at night—if air is audible—during rains | 393 |
| “ — “ in the day—if there is dust-whorl —during rains | 437 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| <i>Vedic study</i> —to be omitted, when donkeys are crying in a line | 401 |
| " — " " " camels " " " ... | 401 |
| " —not right in cremation-ground | 401 |
| " — " near the village | 401 |
| " — " in the cow-pasture | 401 |
| " — " while one is dressed in garment worn during sexual intercourse | 401 |
| " — " after receiving presents at Shrāddha | 401 |
| " — " when the village is beset with thieves | 402 |
| " — " during fire-alarm | 402 |
| " — " at the appearance of portents | 402 |
| " —the primary duty of the Brāhmaṇa | 423 |
| " —brings endless bliss | 424 |
| " —to be omitted for three days, at the <i>Upākarma</i> and the <i>Utsarjana</i> | 408 |
| " — " " one day and night at the <i>Aṣṭakas</i> | 408 |
| " — " on the last nights of the seasons... .. | 408 |
| " — " during altercations | 404 |
| " — " " a fight... .. | 404 |
| " — " in the midst of an army... .. | 404 |
| " — " during a battle | 404 |
| " — " when one has just eaten... .. | 404 |
| " — " during indigestion | 404 |
| " — " after vomiting... .. | 404 |
| " — " when there is eructation | 404 |
| " —not to be done, without permission of the guest... .. | 404 |
| " — " " while wind blows violently | 404 |
| " — " " when bleeding | 404 |
| " — " " wounded | 404 |
| " —to be discontinued, if cattle or frog or cat or dog or snake or mongoose or rat come between the Teacher and the Pupil' | 408 |
| " —to be avoided, when place is unclean | 408 |
| " — " " body " " | 408 |
| <i>Vedapāraṅga</i> —explained | 154 |
| ' <i>Vedas Three</i> '—the term does not include the <i>Atharvaveda</i> | 11 |
| " —Duties of <i>Hotṛ</i> , <i>Adhvaryu</i> and <i>Udgātṛ</i> and of Brāhmaṇa-priest, described in | 10 |
| <i>Vedas</i> —Which are the three | 10 |
| <i>Vedasmātaka</i> —distinguished from <i>Vratasmātaka</i> | 12 |
| " —Distinction of—from <i>Vratasmātaka</i> —explained under Dis. IV | 12 |
| ' <i>Vedic Study</i> '—the predominant factor | 4 |
| " —sanctificatory as well as fruitful | 7 |
| " —Results of—accrue to the twice-born Boy, duly initiated | 7 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Vegetables—to be served on the ground | 246 |
| Vessels—to be used at Shrāddha | 221 |
| " —of silver, " " , conducive to imperishability | 221 |
| Vighasa—to be lived upon daily | 295 |
| " —name of what is left by those who must be fed ... | 295 |
| Village priest—Brāhmaṇa—not to eat at a sacrifice performed by | 450 |
| Vishvajit | 8 |
| Viṣṇu—quoted | 260 |
| Viṣṇuryonin Kalpayatu, &c. | 61 |
| Vishvēdīvas—Offerings to—at daily Shrāddha | 107 |
| " —Food cooked daily for | 108 |
| " —Daily offering to | 109 |
| " —Offering to—in the sky | 113 |
| " —At Shrāddha offered to—the food offered, should be given to a learned Brāhmaṇa | 182 |
| " —invited to Shrāddha | 224 |
| Vratasnātaka—is one who cuts short the Observances, before finishing his Vedic Study | 11-12 |
| " —one is entitled to the title, after having put in, at least, three years' work | 12 |
| " —distinguished from Vedasnātaka | 12 |
| " and Vedasnātaka—distinction between—ex- plained under Discourse IV | 12 |
| Vratyaṣṭoma—One who officiates at—should not be fed at Shrāddha | 172 |
| Vṛṣṇī—stands for the Shūdra woman | 177 |
| " — " " woman in general | 209 |
| Vyāsa—holds that the evil of feeding unqualified men at Shrāddha, accrues to the feeder, not to the fed ... | 156 |
| " —quoted | 157 |

W

| | |
|--|----------|
| Water-offering—daily—an optional alternative to Daily Shrāddha | 294 |
| " —Remnant of—to be poured near the Balls, offer- ed at Shrāddha | 240 |
| " libation—with silver-vessel | 221 |
| " " —to be poured in ' Apasavya ' form | 296 |
| " jar—a ' slaughter-house,' for the Householder ... | 90 |
| " —to be offered to guest | 121, 385 |
| " —one of the things that must be offered to a guest ... | 124 |
| " —Offer of—should not fail in a good house | 124 |
| Wealth—secured by honouring guests | 127 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|----------|
| Wealth—Sources of—for the Accomplished Student ... | 341 |
| „ —to be sought for from the king ... | 341 |
| „ — „ „ „ one, at whose sacrifice one officiates ... | 341 |
| „ — „ „ „ one's pupil ... | 341 |
| „ —‘ Pure ’ means of acquiring ... | 476 |
| „ —‘ Mixed ’ „ „ ... | 476 |
| „ —‘ Black ’ „ „ ... | 477 |
| Wife—to be associated with the Householder in all rites ... | 88 |
| „ —friends and relations to be fed with ... | 182, 185 |
| „ —to eat with husband ... | 182 |
| „ —eats after the „ ... | 183 |
| „ —to eat before the husband, according to some ... | 185 |
| „ —not to eat before her husband ... | 186 |
| „ —to make Bali offerings, out of food cooked in the evening ... | 148 |
| „ — „ „ without mantras ... | 148 |
| „ —if taken before the elder brother, the man becomes the ‘ Superseder of his elder ’ ... | 191 |
| „ —to be taken in the second quarter of life ... | 299 |
| „ —One should not eat with ... | 340 |
| „ —in her courses, not to be approached ... | 349 |
| „ —not to be looked at, when she is eating ... | 349 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ snoring ... | 349 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ yawning ... | 349 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ sitting at ease ... | 349 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ applying collyrium to her eyes ... | 351 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ anointing herself ... | 352 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ uncovered ... | 352 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ at time of delivery ... | 352 |
| „ —is one's own body ... | 444 |
| „ —eating middlemost Ball offered at Shrāddha—gets a long-lived son, intelligent, wealthy and famous ... | 279 |
| „ —desirous of son—should eat the ball offered to grandfather, at Pārvaṇa Shrāddha ... | 278 |
| „ —taken by the twice-born man, to be of the same caste... .. | 19 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ „ ‘ endowed with signs ’ ... | 19 |
| „ —brought into existence by ‘ Marriage ’ ... | 21 |
| „ —serves the visible and invisible ends of man ... | 21 |
| „ —Only first-married girl, of the same caste, is entitled to the title of ... | 36 |
| „ —to be approached only during courses ... | 71 |
| „ —One should be attached to his own ... | 71 |
| „ —to be approached, when she desires ... | 71, 77 |
| „ —not to be approached on sacred days ... | 71 |
| „ —Rules regarding approach to one's—are of the nature of ‘ Preclusion ’ ... | 74 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Wife—not to be approached on 'sacred days' | 78 |
| „ —to be approached on even days of her season—by one who desires a male child | 80 |
| Woman—Intercourse with—to be avoided, even after the learn- ing of the Vedic text has been finished—till such time as the meaning of the Veda and of the Subsidiary Sciences is learnt | 15 |
| „ —By avoiding—on forbidden days and on eight other days—one retains one's 'continence' | 82 |
| „ —when honoured—the gods rejoice | 86 |
| „ — „ not honoured—all rites are futile | 86 |
| „ —Pregnant—to be fed immediately after guests | 133 |
| „ —Sons of 'appointed' | 195 |
| „ — „ 'unappointed' | 195 |
| „ —not to be looked at, naked | 356 |
| „ —Brāhmaṇa, not to eat at Sacrifice, performed by | 459 |
| „ —Sacrifices by—prescribed in <i>Gṛhya</i> rules | 459 |
| „ —Food of the unchaste—to be avoided | 463 |
| Word—Kind—one of the things that must be offered to a guest | 124 |
| „ — „ —should not fail in a good house | 124 |
| Worship—done with faith and devotion, by means of offerings of water, garland, etc. | 105 |

Y

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Yajñavalkya—quoted | 32, 89, 150, 240, 259, 264, 362, 481 |
| „ —Definition by—of Brāhma marriage—quoted | 51 |
| „ —on the giving of cows | 481 |
| Yājñya mantras | 109 |
| Yajurveda—not to be recited during Sāma-chant | 405 |
| „ — „ „ after reading the end of the Veda | 405 |
| „ — „ „ „ „ „ Aranyaka | 405 |
| „ —is human... .. | 406 |
| Yakṣmi—in the sense of invalid in general | 175 |
| 'Yama' and 'Niyama' | 458 |

